



1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8

# Annals of the ICRP

9

ICRP Publication XXX

10  
11  
12  
13  
14

## Assessment of Radiation Exposure of Astronauts in Space

15  
16  
17

Editor  
C.H. CLEMENT

18  
19  
20  
21

Assistant Editor  
M. SASAKI

22  
23  
24

Authors  
G. Dietze, D.T. Bartlett, F.A. Cucinotta, M. Pelliccioni, T. Sato, V. Petrov,  
G. Reitz, I.R. McAulay, J. Xianghong, D.A. Cool

25  
26  
27  
28  
29

PUBLISHED FOR

30  
31  
32

The International Commission on Radiological Protection

33  
34  
35

36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77

**CONTENTS**

TITLE PAGE.....	00
GUEST EDITORIAL.....	00
ABSTRACT.....	00
PREFACE.....	00
MAIN POINTS.....	00
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY.....	00
GLOSSARY.....	00
1. INTRODUCTION.....	00
2. RADIATION ENVIRONMENT IN SPACE.....	00
2.1 Primary radiation field.....	00
2.2 Galactic cosmic radiation.....	00
2.3 Solar cosmic radiation.....	00
2.4 Trapped radiation.....	00
2.5 Interaction with magnetic fields.....	00
3. QUANTITIES USED IN RADIOLOGICAL PROTECTION.....	00
3.1 Dose quantities in radiological protection.....	00
3.1.1 Protection quantities.....	00
3.1.2 Operational dose quantities.....	00
3.2 Description of radiation quality.....	00
3.2.1 Relative biological effectiveness.....	00
3.2.2 Radiation weighting factor.....	00
3.2.3 Quality factor.....	00
3.3 Approach for space applications.....	00
3.3.1 Protection quantities.....	00
3.3.2 Quantities for measurements.....	00
3.3.3 Quantities for high doses.....	00
4. METHODS OF MEASUREMENT OF RADIATION FLUENCES AND DOSES.....	00
4.1 Measurement quantities.....	00
4.2 Purpose of Measurements.....	00
4.3 Instrumentation for radiation spectrometry, area and individual monitoring.....	00
4.3.1 General.....	00
4.3.2 Active devices.....	00
4.3.3 Passive devices.....	00
4.4 Biomarkers of exposure.....	00
4.5 Instrument characterisation and calibration.....	00
4.6 Accuracy and uncertainties for measurements in spacecraft.....	00
5. RADIATION FIELDS INSIDE SPACECRAFT AND ON	



78	PLANETARY SURFACES.....	00
79	5.1 General.....	00
80	5.2 Physics of space radiation transport.....	00
81	5.2.1 Radiation transport.....	00
82	5.2.2 Atomic processes.....	00
83	5.2.3 Nuclear interactions.....	00
84	5.3 Proton, neutron and heavy ion transport codes.....	00
85	5.3.1 Inter-comparison and validation of radiation transport codes.....	00
86	5.4 Radiation fields inside spacecraft.....	00
87	5.5 Radiation shielding.....	00
88	5.6 Lunar and Mars surface.....	00
89	6. RADIATION FIELDS AND DOSES IN THE HUMAN BODY.....	00
90	6.1 Phantoms.....	00
91	6.2 Dose conversion coefficients.....	00
92	6.3 Calculation of organ doses of astronauts within spacecraft.....	00
93	6.4 Assessment of doses in the body by measurements.....	00
94	6.5 Biodosimetric measurements.....	00
95	7. OPERATIONAL RADIATION PROTECTION IN SPACE.....	00
96	7.1 Pre-flight mission design.....	00
97	7.2 Area monitoring.....	00
98	7.3 Individual monitoring.....	00
99	7.4 Dose recording.....	00
100	7.5 Consideration of uncertainties.....	00
101	8. CONCLUSIONS.....	00
102	REFERENCES.....	00
103	ANNEX	
104	Conversion coefficients and mean quality factors for protons, neutrons,	
105	alpha particles and heavy ions ( $2 < Z \leq 28$ ).	
106		
107		
108		

109  
110  
111  
112  
113  
114  
115  
116  
117  
118  
119  
120  
121  
122  
123  
124  
125  
126  
127  
128  
129

## PREFACE

Space flight is one of the occupational exposures from natural sources already listed in ICRP Publication 60 (1991), but the number of persons involved in space flights was small and hence no guidelines have been developed by ICRP to date.

The present report is the first publication of the International Commission on Radiological Protection (ICRP) dealing with the topic of radiation exposures of astronauts in space. The following terms of reference were given to the Task Group preparing this report:

- Analyze the radiation fields in space with special attention to the high-LET components and solar particle events,
- Investigate the application of dose quantities used in radiological protection ,
- Describe devices for measurement of particle fluences and doses in space environment,
- Describe procedures of the assessment of doses to astronauts performed by measurements and calculations, and
- Present some data of fluence-to-dose conversion coefficients for heavy ions.

The report was prepared by a Task Group on “Radiation Protection in Space” of ICRP Committee 2. The membership of the Task Group was:

G. Dietze (Chairman)	D.T. Bartlett	F.A. Cucinotta
M. Pelliccioni	V. Petrov	G. Reitz
T. Sato		

130

Corresponding members were:

I.R. McAulay	D.A. Cool	J. Cooper
J. Xianghong		

131  
132  
133

The membership of Committee 2 during the preparation of this report was:

(2005-2009)

H.G Menzel. (Chairman)	W. Bolch	M. Balonov
V. Berkovski	A. Bouville	G. Dietze
K. Eckerman	N. Ishigure	J. Harrison
N. Ishigure	J. Lipsztein	F. Paquet
H. Paretzke	A. Pradhan	J. Stather
Ch. Streffer (Chairman until 2007)		Z. Yongzeng

134  
135

(since 2009)

H.G Menzel. (Chairman)	W. Bolch	M. Balonov
D. Bartlett	V. Berkovski	R. Cox
G. Dietze	K. Eckerman	A. Endo
J. Harrison	Jinzen Ma	N. Ishigure
R. Leggett	J. Lipsztein	F. Paquet
N. Petoussi-Henss	A. Pradhan	

136  
137

138  
139  
140  
141  
142  
143  
144  
145  
146  
147  
148  
149  
150  
151  
152  
153  
154  
155  
156  
157  
158  
159  
160  
161  
162  
163  
164  
165  
166  
167  
168  
169  
170  
171  
172  
173  
174  
175  
176  
177  
178  
179  
180  
181  
182  
183  
184  
185

## MAIN POINTS

- The radiation field astronauts are exposed to in space is very complex. It contains electrons, protons, alpha particles and heavier ions up to very high energies from galactic cosmic radiation, protons and electrons emitted from the Sun, protons and electrons trapped in belts by the magnetic field of the Earth, and various secondary radiations created in interactions of the primary radiation with materials of the spacecraft. Depending on the time present in space, mission doses to astronauts may become much higher than 100 mSv. Only external radiation exposure to astronauts needs to be considered.
- Due to the specifics of the radiation field in space not all concepts of quantities defined for radiological protection applications on Earth are appropriate for applications in space missions, especially when risk assessment is an important task. A radiation weighting factor  $w_R = 20$  for all types and energies of heavy ions in the definition of equivalent dose is not justified. For heavy ions the ratio of  $w_R$  and mean quality factors averaged over the human body is up to a factor of 10 depending on the type and energy of the ion.
- No specific operational dose quantity is recommended for area monitoring in space. Quantities to be measured are radiation fluence rates and energy distributions of different types of particles, and LET-distributions. For individual monitoring, measurement of absorbed dose at the surface of the body in combination with LET-distributions may be appropriate for an assessment of effective dose equivalent or organ dose equivalent.
- Radiation transport calculations are important tools for information about radiation exposure of astronauts. Based on data about the primary radiation fields transport calculations are able to calculate radiation fields inside spacecrafts, fields on the body of astronauts and in organs or tissues of anthropomorphic phantoms.
- Generally, two different procedures may be applied for the assessment of doses in the astronaut's body by calculations. One may either assess the radiation field parameters near to an astronaut and then apply fluence-to-dose conversion coefficients for all types of particles involved for the assessment of organ doses or one may calculate organ doses in a body using the radiation field data outside of the spacecraft and a code which combines radiation transport in the spacecraft and in the human body. Measurements with individual dosimeters near to the body of an astronaut in combination with calculations may be directly correlated to doses in the human body.
- The report presents conversion coefficients for mean absorbed doses in organs and tissues of the body for heavy ions up to  $Z = 28$ . The calculations are based on the reference voxel phantoms following the 2007 Recommendations of the Commission. Data are given for isotropic (ISO) exposure of the body. Also mean quality factors,  $Q_T$ , for the specified organs and tissues of the body are presented.  $Q_T$ -values vary between about 2 and 25.
- Information and data are also presented for the quality factor concept derived from the track structure of charged particles in tissue as proposed by NASA... This results in a different distribution of  $Q$  in terms of LET with a stronger decrease of  $Q$  with increasing LET.

186  
187  
188  
189

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

190 a) Astronauts are living and working in low Earth orbits for extended periods of time,  
191 especially during the operation and maintenance of the International Space Station (ISS) and  
192 scientific investigations. Furthermore, plans are already discussed for outer space missions of  
193 astronauts.

194 b) . In ICRP 103 it is stated that “in exceptional cases of cosmic radiation exposures, such  
195 as exposure in space travel, where doses may be significant and some type of control  
196 warranted, should be dealt with separately from the conventional approach of occupational  
197 exposure”. Therefore, although astronauts are exposed to ionizing radiation during their  
198 occupational activities they are usually not classified as being occupationally exposed in the  
199 sense of the ICRP system for radiation protection.

200 c) The report contains 7 Chapters. The first one is an introduction describing the specific  
201 situation of astronauts in space and the differences of the radiation field in space compared to  
202 fields on Earth, thereby showing areas where approaches applied in radiological protection  
203 measures on Earth need to be modified.

204 d) In Chapter 2 the radiation fields in space are described in detail. The solar system with  
205 the Sun at its centre is embedded in a complex mixture of galactic cosmic radiation (GCR) -  
206 protons,  $\alpha$ -particles and heavy ions - which continuously enters the heliosphere from all  
207 directions. Inside the heliosphere, the GCR fluence rate and particle energy distributions are  
208 modulated by the interplanetary magnetic field produced by the charged particles  
209 continuously emitted by the Sun, the so-called solar wind. In addition to the solar wind, the  
210 Sun occasionally emits unusually large pulses of energetic particles – mostly protons and  
211 electrons – called solar-particle events (SPEs). Celestial bodies equipped with a magnetic  
212 moment like the Earth are surrounded by toroidal belts of particulate radiation. Such radiation  
213 belts constitute an important third primary exposure source. Fluence rates of cosmic radiation  
214 are not constant; they vary between two extremes which correspond in time with the  
215 maximum and minimum solar activity. Solar activity and cosmic radiation fluence rates are  
216 inversely correlated. In Sections 2.2 to 2.5 the various components of the radiation field in  
217 space are presented and the influence of the Earth’s magnetic field is described.

218 e) Chapter 3 is dealing with the quantities used in radiological protection. In the first part  
219 the system of dose quantities as given in Publication 103 (2007) is described and secondly the  
220 relative biological effectiveness (RBE) is discussed especially with respect to the large  
221 contribution of heavy ions and the very high energies. A single  $w_R$ -value of 20 for all heavy  
222 ions of all energies is not appropriate for space radiation fields. Hence, for space applications  
223 the concept of a quality factor,  $Q(L)$ , is applied also to the protection quantities. In Section  
224 3.3 the approach for applications in space is described in detail.

225 f) In Chapter 4 the methods of fluence and dose measurements in space are described.  
226 This includes instrumentation for fluence measurements, radiation spectrometry, area  
227 dosimetry, and individual monitoring. Passive and active devices are mentioned and also the  
228 use of biomarkers for the assessment of mission doses is described. Some advice for quality  
229 control and the assessment of uncertainties is also given in this Chapter.

230 g) In Chapter 5 the methods of determining quantities describing the radiation fields  
231 within a spacecraft are given. Radiation transport calculations are the most important tool for  
232 an assessment of radiation fields inside a spacecraft starting from the radiation field in free  
233 space and considering the walls and further equipment of the spacecraft. In this chapter some

234 physical data used in radiation transport codes are presented and the various codes used for  
235 calculations in high-energy radiation fields as in space described. Results of calculations of  
236 radiation fields in spacecrafts are given. A discussion of shielding possibilities is included in  
237 this Chapter, too.

238 h) Chapter 6 is dealing with methods of determining mean absorbed doses and dose  
239 equivalent  $s$  in organs and tissues of the human body. Calculated conversion coefficients of  
240 fluence to mean absorbed dose in an organ or tissue are given for heavy ions up to  $Z=58$  for  
241 energies from 10 MeV/u to 100 GeV/u. For the same set of ions and ion energies mean  
242 quality factors in organs and tissues are presented using on the one hand the  $Q(L)$  function  
243 defined in Publication 60 of the Commission and on the other hand a  $Q(Z,E)$  function  
244 proposed by NASA. In Sections 6.4 assessment of doses in the body by measurements are  
245 described and results are compared with calculations. In Section 6.5 biodosimetric  
246 measurements for the assessment of mission doses are presented.

247 i) In Chapter 7 operational measures with regard to the assessment of the exposure of  
248 astronauts during space missions. This includes pre-flight mission design, area and individual  
249 monitoring during flights in space and dose recording. The importance of considering  
250 uncertainties in dose assessment is also mentioned.

251 j) In an Annex numerical data of conversion coefficients and mean quality factors for  
252 protons, neutrons, alpha particles and heavy ions ( $2 < Z \leq 28$ ) are given.

253  
254

## 255 GLOSSARY

256 Absorbed dose,  $D$ 257 The absorbed dose is the quotient of  $d\bar{\varepsilon}$  by  $dm$ :

258 
$$D = \frac{d\bar{\varepsilon}}{dm}$$

259 where  $d\bar{\varepsilon}$  is the mean energy imparted by ionising radiation to matter of mass  $dm$ . The unit  
260 of absorbed dose is joule per kilogram (J/kg), and its special name is gray (Gy).

261

262 Ambient dose equivalent,  $H^*(10)$ 263 The dose equivalent at a point in a radiation field that would be produced by the  
264 corresponding expanded and aligned field in the ICRU sphere at depth of 10 mm on the  
265 radius vector opposing the direction of the aligned field. The unit of ambient dose equivalent  
266 is joule per kilogram (J/kg), and its special name is sievert (Sv).

267

268 Biomarker

269 A traceable substance indicating changes in a cell or an organ caused by environmental  
270 actions, e.g. by ionising radiation.

271

272 Charged Particle Equilibrium

273 Charged particles equilibrium in a volume of interest means that the energies, numbers and  
274 directions of the charged particles are constant throughout this volume. This is equivalent to  
275 saying that the distribution of charged particle energy radiance does not vary within the  
276 volume. In particular, it follows that the sums of the energies (excluding rest energies) of the  
277 charged particle entering and leaving the volume are equal

278

279 Cross section,  $\sigma$ 280 The cross section of a target entity for a particular interaction produced by incident charged  
281 or uncharged particles of a given type and energy is given by:

282 
$$\sigma = \frac{N}{\Phi}$$

283 where  $N$  is the mean number of such interactions per target entity subjected to the particle  
284 fluence,  $\Phi$ . The unit of cross section is  $\text{m}^2$ . A special unit often used for the cross section is  
285 the barn where 1 barn (b) =  $10^{-28} \text{m}^2$ . A full description of an interaction process requires,  
286 *inter alia*, the knowledge of the distributions of cross sections in terms of energy and  
287 direction of all emergent particles from the interaction. Such distributions, sometimes called  
288 'differential cross sections', are obtained by differentiations of  $\sigma$  with respect to energy and  
289 solid angle.

290

291 Deterministic effect

292 See 'Tissue reaction'.

293

294 Detriment

295 The total harm to health experienced by an exposed group and its descendants as a result of  
296 the group's exposure to a radiation source. Detriment is a multi-dimensional concept; its

297 principal components are the stochastic quantities probability of attributable fatal cancer,  
298 weighted probability of attributable non-fatal cancer, weighted probability of severe heritable  
299 effects, and length of life lost if the harm occurs.

300

301 Directional dose equivalent,  $H'(d, \Omega, \square)$

302

303 The dose equivalent at a point in a radiation field that would be produced by the  
304 corresponding expanded field in the ICRU sphere at a depth,  $d$ , on a radius in a specified  
305 direction,  $\Omega$ . The unit of directional dose equivalent is joule per kilogram (J/kg) and its  
306 special name is sievert (Sv).

307

308 Dose conversion coefficient

309 A coefficient relating a dose quantity to a physical quantity, both for internal and external  
310 radiation exposure. In internal dosimetry this term is also called a 'dose coefficient'.

311

312 Dose equivalent,  $H$

313 The dose equivalent at a point in tissue is given by:

314

$$H = Q D$$

315 where  $D$  is the absorbed dose and  $Q$  is the quality factor at that point. The unit of dose  
316 equivalent is joule per kilogram (J/kg), and its special name is sievert (Sv).

317

318 Dose equivalent in an organ or tissue,  $H_{T,Q}$

319 The product of the mean quality factor,  $Q_T$ , and the mean absorbed dose,  $D_T$ , in an organ or  
320 tissue T:  $H_{T,Q} = Q_T D_T$ .

321 A quantity introduced by ICRP in Publication 26 and replaced by equivalent dose in an organ  
322 or tissue in Publication 60.

323

324

325 Dose limit

326 Recommended value of a dose to an individual that shall not be exceeded in planned  
327 exposure situations.

328

329 Effective charge number,  $Z^*$

330 The charge number  $Z$  of a nuclei reduced by a factor depending on the relative velocity  $\beta$   
331 (velocity of the nuclei relative to the velocity of light) which takes account of the fact that at  
332 low velocities the nuclei is not completely ionised. It is

333

$$Z^* = Z (1 - \exp(-125 \beta Z^{2/3}))$$

334

335 Effective dose,  $E$

336 The tissue-weighted sum of equivalent dose in an organ or tissue from all specified organs  
337 and tissues of the body, given by the expression:

338

$$E = \sum_T w_T \sum_R w_R D_{T,R} = \sum_T w_T H_T$$

339 where  $H_T$  is the equivalent dose in an organ or tissue T,  $D_{T,R}$  is the mean absorbed dose in an  
340 organ or tissue T from radiation of type R, and  $w_T$  is the tissue weighting factor. The sum is  
341 performed over organs and tissues considered to be sensitive to the induction of stochastic

342 effects. The unit of effective dose is joule per kilogram (J/kg), and its special name is sievert  
343 (Sv).

344

345 Effective dose equivalent,  $H_E$

346 The tissue-weighted sum of dose equivalent in an organ or tissue from all specified organs  
347 and tissues of the body, given by the expression:

348 
$$H_E = \sum_T w_T H_{T,Q}$$

349 where  $H_{T,Q}$  is the dose equivalent in an organ or tissue T. The unit of effective dose  
350 equivalent is joule per kilogram (J/kg), and its special name is sievert (Sv).

351 A quantity introduced by ICRP in Publication 26 and replaced by effective dose in  
352 Publication 60.

353

354 Equivalent dose in an organ or tissue,  $H_T$

355 The equivalent dose in an organ or tissue is given by:

356 
$$H_T = \sum_R w_R D_{T,R}$$

357 where  $D_{T,R}$  is the mean absorbed dose from radiation of type R in the specified organ or  
358 tissue T, and  $w_R$  is the radiation weighting factor. The unit of equivalent dose is joule per  
359 kilogram (J/kg) and its special name is sievert (Sv).

360

361 Fluence,  $\Phi$

362 The quotient of  $dN$  by  $da$ , where  $dN$  is the number of particles incident on a sphere of cross-  
363 sectional area  $da$ , thus:

364 
$$\Phi = \frac{dN}{da}$$

365 The unit of fluence is  $m^{-2}$ .

366

367 Galactic cosmic radiation (GCR)

368 Charged particle radiation which continuously enters the heliosphere from outer space from  
369 all directions. The radiation contains electrons (about 2%) and a broad range of charged  
370 particles from protons up to high-Z particles with high energies up to several hundreds of  
371 GeV and even higher. The fluence rate of the GCR in the heliosphere is inversely correlated  
372 with the solar activity. It is caused by the solar magnetic field, which is coupled to the solar  
373 wind.

374

375 Geomagnetic cut-off rigidity

376 See "rigidity threshold".

377

378 Heavy ion

379 Ions of elements heavier than He.

380

381 Heliosphere

382 The space formed by the Sun and its planets.

383

384 ICRU 4-element tissue

385 ICRU 4-element tissue has a density of 1 g/cm<sup>3</sup>, and a mass composition of 76.2 % oxygen,  
386 11.1 % carbon, 10.1 % hydrogen, and 2.6 % nitrogen.

387

388 ICRU sphere

389 A hypothetical sphere, 30 cm in diameter, of tissue-equivalent material (ICRU 4-element  
390 tissue) with a density of 1 g cm<sup>-3</sup> and a mass composition of 76.2 % oxygen, 11.1 % carbon,  
391 10.1 % hydrogen and 2.6 % nitrogen.

392

393 K-, Kp-index

394 Index quantifying disturbances in the horizontal component of Earth's magnetic field with a  
395 number in the range 0-9 with 1 being calm and 5 or more indicating a geomagnetic storm.  
396 The K-index is derived from the maximum fluctuations of horizontal components observed  
397 on a magnetometer during a three-hour interval. The official planetary Kp-index is derived by  
398 calculating a weighted average of K-indices from a network of geomagnetic observatories.

399

400 Kerma, *K*

401 Quantity for ionising uncharged particles, defined by the quotient of  $dE_{tr}$  by  $dm$ , where  $dE_{tr}$   
402 is the mean sum of the initial kinetic energies of all the charged particles liberated in a mass  
403  $dm$  of a material by the uncharged particles incident on  $dm$ , thus:

$$404 \quad K = \frac{dE_{tr}}{dm}$$

405 The unit of kerma is joule per kilogram (J/kg) and its special name is gray (Gy).

406

407 Kerma approximation

408 Kerma is sometimes used as an approximation to absorbed dose. The numerical value of the  
409 kerma approaches that of the absorbed dose to the degree that charged-particle equilibrium  
410 exists, that radiative losses are negligible, and that the kinetic energies of the uncharged  
411 particles are large compared to the binding energies of the liberated charged particles.

412

413 Lineal energy

414 The quotient of  $\varepsilon_i$  by  $\bar{l}$ , where  $\varepsilon_i$  is the energy imparted to the matter in a given volume by  
415 a single energy-deposition event  $i$  and  $\bar{l}$  is the mean chord length of that volume, thus

$$416 \quad y = \frac{\varepsilon_i}{\bar{l}}$$

417 The unit of lineal energy is joule per meter (J/m)

418

419 Linear energy transfer/unrestricted linear energy transfer, *L* or LET

420 The quotient of  $dE$  by  $dl$ , where  $dE$  is the mean energy lost by the charged particle due to  
421 electronic interactions in traversing a distance  $dl$  thus:

$$422 \quad L = \frac{dE}{dl}$$

423 The unit of linear energy transfer is joule per metre (J/m), often given in keV/ $\mu$ m.

424

425 Linear-non-threshold (LNT) model

426 A dose-response model which is based on the concept that, in the low dose range, radiation  
427 doses greater than zero will increase the risk of excess cancer and/or heritable disease in a  
428 simple proportionate manner.

429

430 Low Earth Orbit (LEO)

431 Orbit in space near to the Earth where astronauts are protected against parts of particles of  
432 galactic and solar origin by the Earth magnetic field. The shielding depends on the inclination  
433 of the spacecraft. On the other hand the Earth magnetic field is responsible for the formation  
434 of the trapped radiation belts where mainly protons and electrons from galactic and solar  
435 origin are stored.

436

437 Magnetosphere

438 The Earth magnetic dipole field which extends over a distance from Earth up to about  
439 75 000 km around the geomagnetic equator. Charged particles in a specific energy range are  
440 trapped in the magnetic field. They move in spirals along the geomagnetic field lines, are  
441 reflected back between the magnetic poles acting as mirrors and form radiation belts. These  
442 belts were discovered by van Allen.

443

444

445 Mean absorbed dose in an organ or tissue,  $D_T$

446 The mean absorbed dose in a specified organ or tissue T, is given by

447 
$$D_T = \frac{1}{m_T} \int D dm \text{ ,}$$

448 where  $m_T$  is the mass of the organ or tissue T, and  $D$  is the absorbed dose in the mass element  
449  $dm$ . The unit of mean absorbed dose is joule per kilogram (J/kg), and its special name is gray  
450 (Gy).

451

452 Nuclear track detectors (NTD)

453 Detectors where the tracks of passing charged particles can afterwards be made visible by  
454 suitable chemical treatment and microscopically viewed. These passive detectors are either  
455 plastic nuclear etched track detectors (PNTD) where the tracks are made visible by chemical  
456 etching or nuclear emulsions. Etched track detectors are generally insensitive for radiation  
457 with an LET in water below about  $10 \text{ keV } \mu\text{m}^{-1}$ .

458

459 Occupational exposure

460 The radiation exposure of workers incurred as a result of their work. The Commission limits  
461 its use of 'occupational exposures' to radiation exposures incurred at work as a result of  
462 situations that can reasonably be regarded as being the responsibility of the operating  
463 management.

464

465 Operational quantities

466 Quantities used in practical applications for monitoring and investigating situations  
467 involving external exposure and intakes of radionuclides. They are defined for measurements  
468 and assessment of doses in the body.

469

470 Organ absorbed dose

471 Short phrase for "mean absorbed dose in an organ or tissue".

472

473 Organ dose equivalent

474 Short phrase for “dose equivalent in an organ or tissue”.

475

476 Organ equivalent dose

477 Short phrase for “equivalent dose in an organ or tissue”.

478

479 Optically stimulated luminescence dosimeters (OSLD)

480 Detectors where the energy stored by particles in the detector material (glasses) is release as  
481 luminescence light by optical laser stimulation. The amount of emitted light is proportional to  
482 the absorbed dose.

483

484 Personal dose equivalent,  $H_p(d)$ 

485 The dose equivalent in soft tissue at an appropriate depth,  $d$ , below a specified point on the  
486 human body. The soft tissue is ICRU 4-element tissue. The unit of personal dose equivalent  
487 is joule per kilogram (J/kg) and its special name is sievert (Sv). The specified point is usually  
488 given by the position where the individual dosimeter is worn. For the assessment of effective  
489 dose, a depth of 10 mm is recommended, and for the assessment of equivalent dose to the  
490 skin and the lens of the eye, depths of 0.07 mm and 3 mm, respectively, are recommended.

491

492 Protection quantities

493 Dose quantities related to the human body used for setting exposure limits and in the  
494 context of optimisation. They have been developed by the Commission for radiological  
495 protection to allow quantification of the detriment to people from exposure of the human  
496 body to ionising radiation from both whole and partial body external irradiation and from  
497 intakes of radionuclides.

498 Quality factor,  $Q$ 

499 A dimensionless factor defined to reflect the relative biological effectiveness of high-LET  
500 radiations compared to low-LET radiation at low exposure levels.

501  $Q$  is usually given by a function  $Q(L)$ , where  $L$  is the unrestricted linear energy transfer in  
502 water.

503 The quality factor at a point in tissue, is given by

$$504 \quad Q = \frac{1}{D} \int_{L=0}^{\infty} Q(L) D_L dL$$

505 where  $D$  is the absorbed dose at that point,  $D_L$  is the distribution of  $D$  in unrestricted linear  
506 energy transfer  $L$  at the point of interest, and  $Q(L)$  is the quality factor as a function of  $L$ . The  
507 integration is to be performed over  $D_L$ , due to all charged particles, excluding their secondary  
508 electrons.

509

510 Radiation belt

511 See “Magnetosphere”.

512

513 Radiation weighting factor,  $w_R$ 

514 A dimensionless factor by which the mean absorbed dose in an organ or tissue,  $D_T$ , is  
515 multiplied to reflect the relative biological effectiveness of high-LET radiations compared

516 with low-LET radiations. The product of  $w_R$  and  $D_T$  is the equivalent dose in the organ or  
517 tissue T.

518

519 Reference male and reference female (reference individual)

520 An idealised male or female with characteristics defined by the Commission for the purpose  
521 of radiological protection, and with the anatomical and physiological characteristics defined  
522 in Publication 89 (ICRP, 2002).

523

524 Reference person

525 An idealised person for whom the equivalent doses in organs and tissues are calculated by  
526 averaging the corresponding doses of Reference Male and Reference Female. The equivalent  
527 doses of the Reference person are used for the calculation of the effective dose.

528

529 Reference phantom

530 The computational phantom of the human body (male or female voxel phantom based on  
531 medical imaging data) defined in Publication 110 (ICRP, 2009) with the anatomical and  
532 physiological characteristics defined in Publication 89 (ICRP, 2002).

533 Reference value

534 Value of a quantity recommended by the Commission for use in dosimetric applications or  
535 biokinetic models. Reference values are fixed and specified with no uncertainty,  
536 independently of the fact that the basis of these values may include many uncertainties.

537

538 Relative biological effectiveness (RBE)

539 The ratio of absorbed dose of a low-LET reference radiation to absorbed dose of the  
540 radiation considered that gives an identical biological effect. RBE values vary with absorbed  
541 dose, absorbed dose rate and the biological endpoint considered. In radiological protection  
542 the RBE at low and very low doses ( $RBE_M$ ) is especially of interest.

543

544 Rigidity,  $R$

545 The magnetic rigidity of an ion given by its momentum (often given in units of GeV/c)  
546 divided by its charge. Parameter used for characterizing the movement of a high-energy  
547 charged particle in the magnetic field in space.

548

549 Rigidity threshold (geomagnetic cut-off rigidity),  $R_c$

550 For each point inside the Earth's magnetosphere and each direction from that point there  
551 exist a rigidity threshold below which the cosmic particles are not able to reach this point.  
552 This rigidity is called the geomagnetic cut-off rigidity,  $R_c$ .

553

554 Solar cosmic radiation (SCR)

555 Radiation emitted from the Sun. The radiation includes continuously emitted electrons and  
556 protons (solar wind) and also high energy particles (mainly electrons and protons) emitted  
557 during solar particle events (SPE).

558

559 Solar cycle

560 Variation of the solar activity between two extremes with a cycle time of about 11 years.  
561 The solar activity can be described by the number of observed sunspots.

562

563 Solar particle event (SPE)

564 An eruption at the Sun surface that releases a large number of particles (mostly electrons  
565 and protons with few helium ions and heavy charged particles) over the course of hours or  
566 days.

567

568 Solar wind

569 Mostly low-energy electrons and protons continuously emitted from the Sun into the  
570 heliosphere and producing the interplanetary magnetic field. The intensity of the solar wind  
571 depends on solar activity and varies with the solar cycle.

572

573 South Atlantic anomaly (SAA)

574 An area where the radiation belt, and hence the trapped protons, comes closer to the Earth  
575 surface due to a displacement of the magnetic dipole axes from the Earth's centre.

576

577 Stochastic effect

578 Effects resulting from damage in a single cell, such as cancer and heritable effects. The  
579 frequency of the event, but not its severity, increases with an increase in the dose. For  
580 protection purposes it is assumed that there is no threshold dose.

581

582 Thermoluminescence detector (TLD)

583 Small sintered chips or pellets of crystals which show luminescence during heating after  
584 exposure to ionising radiation. By fast controlled heating of the crystal, the stored energy is  
585 released through light emission. The function between the actual temperature and the  
586 intensity of the emitted light (glow curve) shows various peaks, the heights of which are  
587 proportional to absorbed dose. These detectors are often used for personal dosimetry.

588

589 Tissue reaction

590 Injury in populations of cells, characterized by a threshold dose and an increase in the  
591 severity of the reaction as the dose is increased further, also termed 'deterministic effect'. In  
592 some cases, these effects are modifiable by post-irradiation procedures including biological  
593 response modifiers.

594

595 Tissue weighting factor,  $w_T$

596 The factor by which the equivalent dose in an organ or tissue T is weighted to represent the  
597 relative contribution of that organ or tissue to overall radiation detriment from stochastic  
598 effects. It is defined such that:

599 
$$\sum_T w_T = 1 .$$

600

601 Trapped particles

602 Particles trapped in the Earth's magnetic field as a result of the interaction of galactic  
603 cosmic radiation and solar cosmic radiation with the Earth's magnetic field and the  
604 atmosphere. Mainly protons and electrons are involved (see also "Magnetosphere").

605

606 Voxel phantom

607 Computational anthropomorphic phantom based on medical tomographic images in which  
608 the anatomy is described by small three-dimensional volume elements (voxels). Collections  
609 of these voxels are used to specify the organs and tissues of the human body.



610  
611  
612  
613  
614  
615  
616  
617  
618  
619  
620  
621  
622  
623

References

ICRP, 2007. The 2007 Recommendations of the International commission on Radiological Protection. ICRP Publication 103. Ann. ICRP 37(2-4).

ICRP, 2012. Conversion Coefficients for Radiological Protection Quantities for External Radiation Exposures. ICRP Publication 116, Annals of the ICRP 40 (1).

ICRU, 2011. Fundamental Quantities and Units for Ionising Radiation (*Revised*). ICRU Report 85a. Journal of ICRU 11 (1a).

624  
625

## 1. INTRODUCTION

626 (1) The radiation field in space is very different from environmental radiation fields on  
627 Earth both with respect to the various types of radiation involved and to their intensities. The  
628 primary radiation field on the Earth surface is composed of low-LET radiations with small  
629 high-LET components including neutrons from cosmic radiation and  $\alpha$ -particles emitted from  
630 terrestrial radionuclides. In contrast, the primary radiation field in space includes electrons,  
631 protons, neutrons,  $\alpha$ -particles and heavy ions up to very high energies. Additional secondary  
632 radiations (e.g. gamma radiation, electrons, muons, neutrons, pions, and collision and  
633 projectile fragments) are produced by interactions within the materials of a spacecraft and its  
634 equipment and the astronauts themselves.

635 (2) The term "space" generally means the galactic space outside of the aviation altitudes  
636 in the lower atmosphere of the Earth. In manned space flight astronauts may experience  
637 three different exposure conditions. The first situation is in low Earth orbit (LEO) where they  
638 are protected against parts of particles of galactic and solar origin depending on the  
639 inclination of the spacecraft by the Earth magnetic field. On the other hand this magnetic  
640 field is responsible for the formation of the trapped radiation belts. In addition, through  
641 interaction of the solar and galactic particles with the nuclei of the Earth's atmosphere albedo  
642 radiation is created. Secondly, leaving the Earth magnetic field to outer space in  
643 interplanetary missions, the radiation exposure due only to particles of solar and galactic  
644 origin, which are directly impinge on the spacecraft. In planetary missions, about one  
645 hemisphere is shielded by the mass of the planet. If there is no atmosphere, the primary  
646 radiation interacts with the nuclei of the soil which leads to the production of secondary  
647 particles with a high contribution of high-LET components. If a thin atmosphere is present, as  
648 in case of Mars, both interactions in the atmosphere and in the soil contribute to secondary  
649 radiation.

650 (3) Astronauts are living and working in low Earth orbits for extended periods of time  
651 and will be involved in outer space missions. They are living under extraordinarily different  
652 environmental conditions than ever encountered on Earth. For missions outside the  
653 magnetosphere, ionising radiation is recognized as the key factor through its impact on crew  
654 health and performance. Obviously the radiation environment is quite different from that on  
655 Earth and human exposure in space is much higher than on Earth and cannot be avoided by  
656 radiation shielding. The reasons for that are the extreme high energies of particles in space  
657 radiation fields and their high penetration depth in matter combined with the release of  
658 secondary radiations (e.g. neutrons and photons) in interactions of the primary radiation with  
659 that material. The exposure of astronauts in space is a special case of environmental  
660 exposure. In long term missions, the exposure of astronauts will be higher than the annual  
661 limits recommended for exposure of workers on Earth. In ICRP 103 it is stated that "in  
662 exceptional cases of cosmic radiation exposures, such as exposure in space travel, where  
663 doses may be significant and some type of control warranted, should be dealt with  
664 separately". Therefore, although astronauts are exposed to ionizing radiation during their  
665 occupational activities they are usually not classified as being occupationally exposed in the  
666 sense of the ICRP system for radiation protection. Their situation during space missions is  
667 similar to special planned exposure situations in emergency exposure situations, in which so-  
668 called rescuers may be exposed to radiation levels during their intervention exceeding dose  
669 limits for occupationally exposed persons. Thus, for a specific mission planned, reference  
670 values for risks or doses may be selected at appropriate levels and no dose limits may be

671 applied for the given mission.

672 (4) During the last two decades there was a marked development in the activities in  
673 space including an increase of the number of astronauts participating in space missions.  
674 Nevertheless, even today, the number of astronauts is small as compared to the large number  
675 of occupationally exposed persons on Earth and in civil aviation. However, considering the  
676 extraordinary exposure situation of this group, radiological protection concepts need to be  
677 well defined and realistically implemented with respect to the specific situation found in the  
678 space environment and during long-term space missions.

679 (5) The basis for any measure in radiological protection should always be the  
680 knowledge of the radiation fields involved. Therefore, measurements of the environmental  
681 radiation and the assessment of the exposure of astronauts are very important tasks. Since the  
682 discovery of cosmic radiation at the start of the last century by V.F. Hess in 1912 (see e. g.  
683 Compton, 1936) the study of cosmic radiation and its various components has already been  
684 performed for a long time and has become even more important during the last fifty years  
685 when activities in space are strongly increasing and frequently include the presence of  
686 astronauts. Obviously the basic information regarding cosmic radiations and their various  
687 components can only be obtained through measurements and this has been performed for  
688 many years. The specific environmental situation in and around a spacecraft can be estimated  
689 either by various measurements at different positions in the specific spacecraft or also by  
690 radiation transport calculations when the spacecraft design is sufficiently modelled and the  
691 specific composition of the external radiation field including its variation in time is well  
692 considered within the simulation code applied. Some parts of this report, therefore, deal with  
693 the various components of the radiation field in space (Chapter 2) and with the computer  
694 codes and calculational approaches used to simulate both radiation shielding possibilities for  
695 the various radiation fields incident upon the spacecraft and the resulting tissue absorbed  
696 doses imparted to the astronauts within the spacecraft (Chapters 5 and 6).

697 (6) The specific radiation field in space with its important contribution of heavy ions  
698 does not allow simple application of the complete system of dosimetric quantities defined for  
699 use in radiological protection on Earth. The radiation weighting factor of 20 defined for all  
700 heavy ions of all energies is not appropriate, nor is the concept of the operational dose  
701 quantities for external exposure situations applicable to the space situation because very high-  
702 energy particles are involved. The concept of operational quantities has been introduced by  
703 the ICRU and ICRP mainly looking at electron, photon and neutron radiations of energies up  
704 to few tens of MeV and has not considered radiation fields in space which include many  
705 other particle types with even higher energies. This topic will be discussed in more detail in  
706 Chapter 3.

707 (7) On Earth, radiological protection of workers and the primary dose limits defined are  
708 aimed at limiting the probability of the occurrence of stochastic effects, e.g. risk of cancer or  
709 hereditary effects, to a level acceptable when compared to other health risks during human  
710 life, while at the same time avoiding detriments in humans by deterministic effects (tissue  
711 reactions). For practical reasons the primary limits are defined in terms of doses (effective  
712 dose and equivalent dose to the skin, hands, feet and lens of the eye where specific limits  
713 have been defined for avoiding deterministic effects) which can be assessed with sufficient  
714 precision for applications in radiological protection, and not in terms of radiation risks the  
715 value of which depends on many individual factors (e.g. age, sex, individual genetic  
716 properties). Especially at low levels of exposure, the knowledge regarding these risks is very  
717 limited and combined with high uncertainties. The value of the quantity effective dose is  
718 calculated by averaging organ equivalent doses over both sexes and using mean values of

719 weighting factors obtained from epidemiological data, hence from large groups of exposed  
720 and unexposed persons. Effective dose should, therefore, not be used for the assessment of  
721 individual risks. In addition to “limitation” of doses and risks the principle of ALARA (As  
722 Low As Reasonably Achievable) is generally applied in radiological protection which means  
723 that even below exposure limits “optimisation” of radiation protection always needs to be  
724 considered and may require further measures.

725 (8) The situation in space is quite different. An exposure of astronauts by environmental  
726 radiation cannot be avoided in space. Prevention by shielding cannot be completely achieved.  
727 Nevertheless, optimisation of radiation protection is an important task, especially because in  
728 long-term missions doses to astronauts may exceed 100 mSv. The occurrence of deterministic  
729 effects can also not generally be excluded. In addition, the knowledge of radiobiological  
730 effects of cosmic radiation in particular heavy ions is very limited. The number of persons  
731 involved is small and hence individual risk assessment is of much higher interest. As a  
732 consequence, values of mean absorbed doses in organs and tissues of the human body play an  
733 important role, since the weighting factors used in the definition of effective dose or  
734 equivalent dose in an organ or tissue are not appropriate in the radiation field in space. In  
735 addition, for many years, the use of organ dose equivalent has been preferred by many space  
736 agencies instead of the quantity equivalent dose in an organ (see Chapter 3).

737 (9) Both radiation monitoring in the spacecraft environment and assessment of doses in  
738 the human body of astronauts are important parts of the radiological protection measures in  
739 space missions. Due to the complex radiation field and the special requirements for use in  
740 space flight radiation monitoring needs specific measurement devices and procedures.  
741 Usually, more than a single dosimeter type is needed for this task and often additional  
742 calculations are necessary to interpret device response (see Chapters 4 and 6).

743 (10) Calculation of conversion coefficients which relate values of particle fluence or dose  
744 external to the human body to values of absorbed dose and mean quality factors in organs and  
745 tissues within the body is an important task and is often used for the assessment of doses in  
746 the body from external measurements. While reference data on conversion coefficients  
747 related to the reference voxel phantoms defined in ICRP Publication 110 have already been  
748 published by the Commission in Publication 116 (ICRP, 2011), data for heavy ions have  
749 become available only recently (Sato et al., 2010). In this report data are presented for  
750 isotropic exposure of both male and female voxel phantoms. Omni-directional exposure  
751 (ISO) is the most realistic exposure situation in space. While shielding effects may result in a  
752 more non-isotropic exposure, the movement of the astronauts within the spacecraft balances  
753 this situation. Hence, data are presented for ISO exposure only (see Chapter 6 and the  
754 Annex). The use of conversion coefficients is, however, not the only method in assessing  
755 organ doses in the body. Based on knowledge of the radiation field outside a spacecraft,  
756 calculation of organ doses can be performed including the full radiation transport through the  
757 walls and the equipment of a spacecraft (see Chapter 6).

758 (11) While on Earth biological dosimetry is mainly restricted to applications in accidental  
759 exposure situations due to the usually low doses of occupationally exposed workers and the  
760 difficulty in measuring doses below about 50 mSv by this method with acceptable  
761 uncertainty, the situation in space is quite different. Mission doses may be above that  
762 “threshold” and biological dosimetry (e.g. study of biological effects on lymphocytes in the  
763 human body) allows a very individual assessment, if in advance the individual sensitivity is  
764 determined and hence an individual calibration is performed. Methods and measurements are  
765 discussed in both Chapters 4 and 6 of the report.

766



768

769

## 2. RADIATION ENVIRONMENT IN SPACE

770

771 (12) The radiation environment in space is a complex mixture of particles of solar and  
772 galactic origin with a broad range of energies. For radiological protection, the relevant  
773 radiation fields are the galactic cosmic radiation (GCR), particles ejected from the Sun during  
774 solar energetic particle (SPE) events, and secondary radiation produced through interaction  
775 with the planet's atmospheric nuclei. Solar wind particles, even when enhanced due to higher  
776 solar activity, do not significantly contribute to the radiation exposure to man due to their  
777 relative low energy and hence their absorption in already very thin shielding materials.  
778 Nevertheless, the solar wind modulates the fluence rate of galactic cosmic radiation in the  
779 energy range below about 1 GeV/u. During phases of higher solar activity, the cosmic  
780 radiation fluence rate is decreased by a factor of three to four compared with phases during  
781 minimum solar activity.

782 (13) Presently, there is no measurable contribution to the radiation exposure by primary  
783 electromagnetic ionising radiation such as from solar Roentgen flares like that which  
784 occurred on November 4<sup>th</sup> 2003 UTC 19:29 or from conspicuous extreme gamma radiation  
785 bursts such as that which occurred on December 27<sup>th</sup> 2004 UTC 21:30:26.55; hence, they are  
786 omitted, although on geological time scale, their impact on the biosphere might have been  
787 significant. Secondary electromagnetic radiation of course contributes as bremsstrahlung  
788 emitted from charged particles upon penetration through matter and as gamma radiation from  
789 the decay of neutral pions  $\pi^0$  created in the Earth's atmosphere.

790 (14) From the point of view of radiological protection, the focus is on the particulate  
791 components of space radiation of ions and electrons only. Electrons might become relevant  
792 during extravehicular activities (EVAs) or if manned activities in the outer radiation belts  
793 become an issue which, however, will not be the case for the foreseeable future.

794 (15) Through the Earth's magnetic field and an atmospheric shield with a thickness of  
795 about 1000 g cm<sup>-2</sup>, the exposure to cosmic radiation on the Earth surface is reduced to a  
796 negligible level. Leaving Earth, astronauts are shielded by the structure of the spacecraft and  
797 its interior by an average of about 20 g cm<sup>-2</sup>, a shielding close to that of the Martian  
798 atmosphere, but when in low Earth orbit, they are still protected by the Earth's magnetic field  
799 which limits even the exposure to solar energetic particles to a level far below the cause of  
800 early radiation effects in man.

801 (16) In the absence of sporadic solar particle events, the radiation exposure in near Earth  
802 orbits inside spacecraft is determined by the galactic cosmic radiation (protons and heavier  
803 ions) and by the protons inside the South Atlantic Anomaly (SAA), an area where the  
804 radiation belt comes closer to the Earth surface due to a displacement of the magnetic dipole  
805 axes from the Earth's centre. In addition, there is an albedo source of neutrons produced as  
806 interaction products of the primary galactic particles with the nuclei of the Earth atmosphere.  
807 Outside the spacecraft, the exposure of astronauts is dominated by the electrons of the horns  
808 of the radiation belt located at about 60° latitude in Polar regions.

809 (17) All these radiations from different sources and their interactions by various  
810 mechanisms determine the actual field of ionising radiation at any given time and location  
811 within the heliosphere. Its complexity is unrivalled by anything we know from terrestrial  
812 experience. The radiation field inside a spacecraft is even more complex through the  
813 interaction of the high energy particles with the spacecraft shielding material and the body  
814 tissues of the astronauts.

815 (18) In deep space missions the Earth's radiation belts will be crossed in a couple of  
816 minutes and therefore its contribution to their radiation exposure is quite small. However, the  
817 subsequent protection by the Earth's magnetic field is then lost, leaving only mission  
818 planning and shielding measures as a means of exposure reduction. The following sections  
819 describe the radiation field in space and the interaction of the charged particles with the  
820 magnetic field and shielding materials. Some numbers are given on the radiation exposure in  
821 low Earth orbits and in interplanetary missions.

822

### 823 **2.1 Primary radiation fields**

824

825 (19) Three major primary sources of radiation can be specified in space.

826 • The solar system with the Sun at its centre is embedded in a complex mixture of  
827 ionising radiation, galactic cosmic radiation (GCR), which continuously enters the  
828 heliosphere from all directions. Inside the heliosphere, the GCR fluence rate and  
829 particle energy distributions are modulated by the interplanetary magnetic field  
830 produced by the charged particles continuously emitted by the Sun, the so-called solar  
831 wind.

832 • In addition to the solar wind, the Sun occasionally emits unusually large pulses of  
833 energetic particles – mostly protons and electrons with a small and variable  
834 contribution from helium and heavy ions - ejected in to space by these solar eruptions.  
835 The most significant of these solar-particle events (SPEs) are produced by the  
836 expulsion of large amounts of material in coronal-mass ejections (CMEs).

837 • Celestial bodies equipped with a magnetic moment like the Earth are surrounded by  
838 toroidal belts of particulate radiation which are constantly replenished by solar particles  
839 and secondary particles caused by the interaction of solar and galactic particles with the  
840 atmosphere. Such radiation belts constitute an important third primary exposure source.

841 (20) Figure 2.1 illustrates these three sources of ionising radiation in space, their  
842 respective spatial scales and the dominant role the Sun plays in modifying its composition.  
843 The highest energies measured for GCR particles (Fig. 2.1) are too large to be compatible  
844 with their postulated acceleration and containment by intra-galactic magnetic fields thereby  
845 giving rise to speculations about extra-galactic sources for this part and hence extending the  
846 spatial scales even further. The corresponding intensities, however, are too low to contribute  
847 substantially to radiation exposures.

848

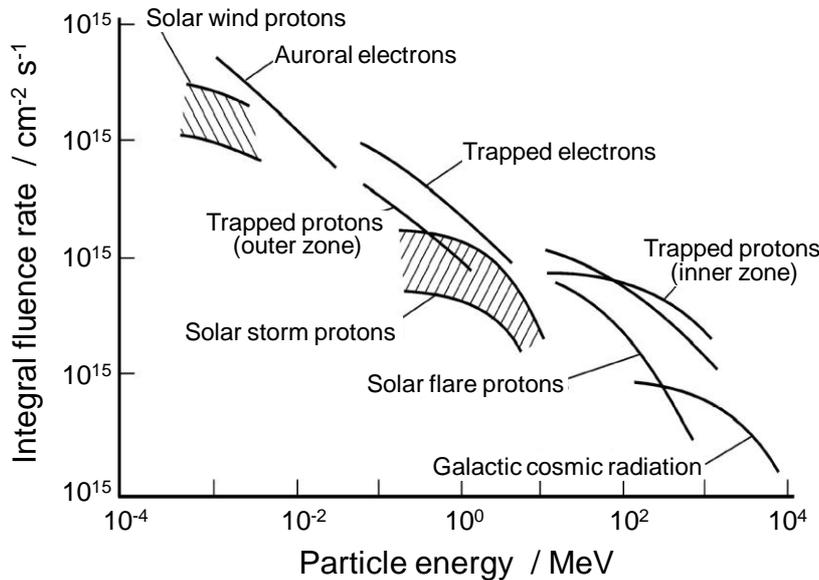


Fig. 2.1. Synoptic view of integral particle fluence rate of space radiation versus upper boundary of particle energy (Wilson, 1978).

849  
850  
851  
852

(21) In addition to their variation with location in space, the intensity and particulate composition in these fields are subject to temporal variations. As far as space radiation is concerned, two temporal scales of space weather events are relevant. Similar to the annual alternation between summer and winter of ordinary weather on Earth, we have to deal with a nearly regular change of solar activity between phases of maximal ('summer') and minimal ('winter') solar activity. The solar 'year' in this case is the Schwabe cycle, a period of about 11 years the duration of which however (presently) varies due to so far unknown mechanisms between 9 and 13.6 years. One measure of this activity for which a continuous observational record exists since 1755 is the Zürich sunspot number (Hathaway et al., 2002). Apparently, the maximum of solar activity is inversely associated with the length of the cycle. In addition to the field variation during the regular solar cycle, episodes of extreme solar activity characterised by explosive releases of magnetic energy (Chen, 2001) which eject giant masses of charged particles from the Sun's corona into the interplanetary magnetic field. After further acceleration in this field, particle energies up to several GeV can be attained. The impact of these solar particle events (SPE) on the radiation field in space can last for days to some weeks.

(22) Further observed solar periodicities like the magnetic Hale cycle of 22 years, the Gleisberg cycle of about 88 years or the De Vries- or Suess cycle of about 210 years have not yet been identified to substantially modulate the radiation field, although their impact on the biosphere probably is important as a recent study on glacial climate cycles discloses (Braun et al., 2005).

874  
875  
876

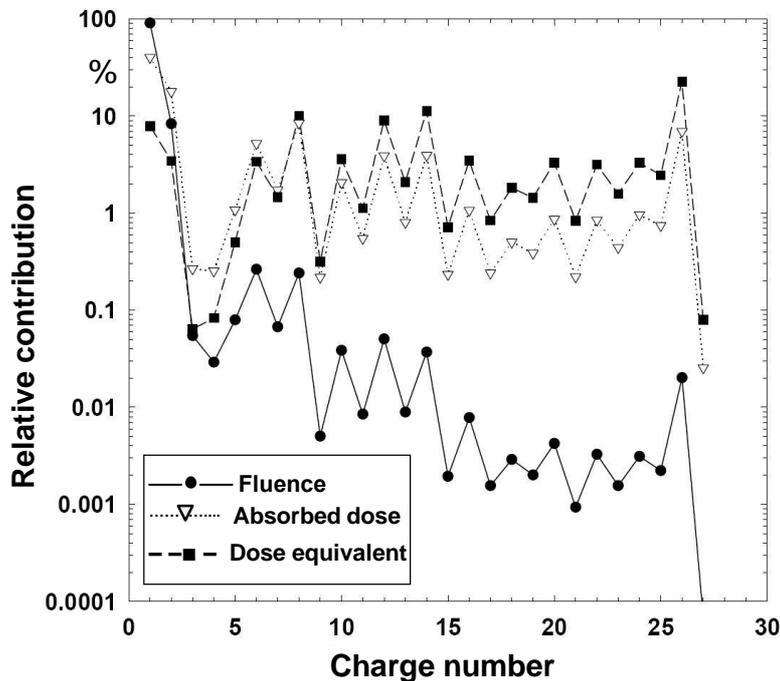
## 2.2 Galactic cosmic radiation

(23) Galactic cosmic radiation originates outside the solar system and impinges isotropically on Earth. There is no conclusive proof of the mechanisms accelerating the charged particles and of the astrophysical sites where matter becomes cosmic particle

880 radiation. There is no information about the directional position of their sources since these  
 881 particles are scrambled by irregular interstellar magnetic fields on their way towards the  
 882 Earth. Because of their high energies - up to  $10^{20}$  eV - they most probably originate from  
 883 supernova explosions, neutron stars, pulsars or other sources where high-energy phenomena  
 884 are involved. Detected radiation consists of 98% baryons and 2% electrons. The baryonic  
 885 component is composed of about 85% protons (hydrogen nuclei), with the remainder being  
 886 alpha particles (about 14%) and heavier nuclei (about 1%). Figure 2.2 shows the abundances  
 887 of these elements up to tin relative to silicon. The ions heavier than alpha particles are termed  
 888 HZE-particles (high charge, with charge numbers  $Z > 2$  and high energy). Although iron ions  
 889 are one-tenth as abundant as carbon or oxygen, their contribution to absorbed dose in tissue is  
 890 substantial, since this dose is proportional to the square of the particle charge. This is  
 891 indicated in Fig. 2.2 (Cucinotta et al, 2001).

892 (24) In addition to the galactic cosmic radiation, a so-called anomalous component is  
 893 observed. It consists of originally neutral particles coming from the interstellar gas which  
 894 become singly ionised by solar radiation after entering the heliosphere. These particles are  
 895 then accelerated in collision regions between fast and slow moving streams of the solar wind.  
 896 They are able to penetrate deeper into the magnetic field than fully ionised cosmic particles.  
 897 Their energies are around 20 MeV/u and consequently they can only contribute to radiation  
 898 effects behind thin shielding. However, it has to be considered that they lose all their  
 899 electrons after penetration of a very small amount of shielding material and thus also deposit  
 900 energy proportional to the square of their charge number  $Z$ .

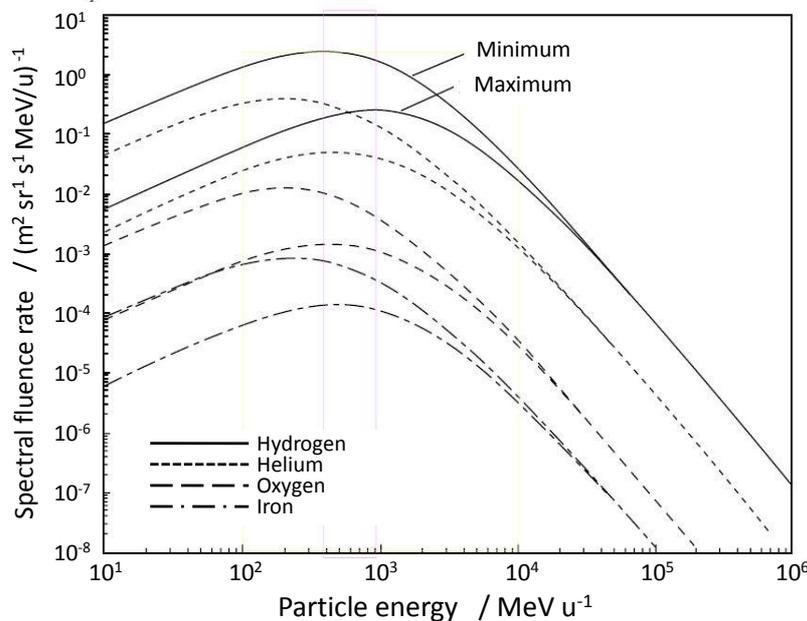
901



902 Fig. 2.2. Elemental composition of galactic charged particles and their relative contribution to  
 903 absorbed dose and dose equivalent in tissue (Cucinotta et al, 2001).  
 904

905  
 906 (25) In this report energies of GCR nuclei are always presented as kinetic energy per  
 907 atomic mass unit (amu or u),  $E$ . This has the advantage that all nuclei having the same value  
 908 of energy per amu move with nearly the same velocity regardless their mass. Using this  
 909 energy scale the energy distributions of the different cosmic ray nuclei are very similar.

910 Fluence rate distributions in energy for hydrogen, helium, carbon and oxygen, and iron are  
 911 shown in Fig. 2.3. At energies  $E$  above some GeV/u the fluence rate is well represented by a  
 912 power law  $N(E) \sim E^{-\gamma}$  with  $\gamma$  around 2.5. Towards lower energies the distributions get flatter  
 913 and show a maximum at about some hundred MeV/u.

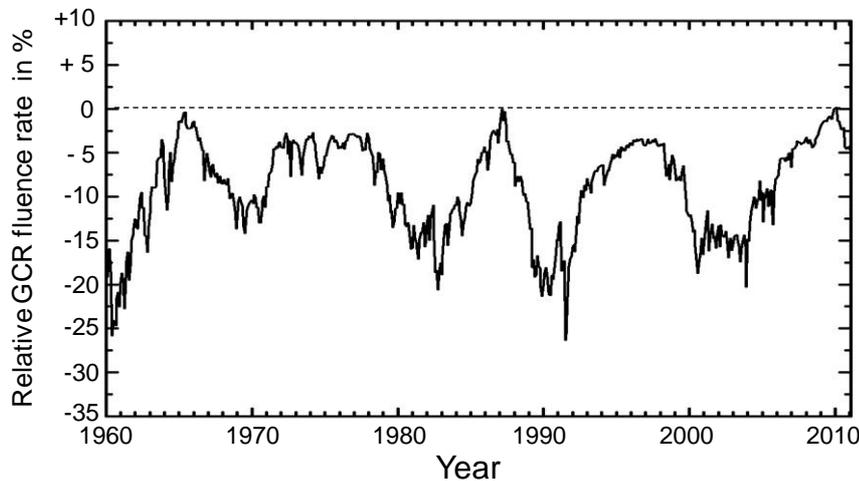


914 Fig. 2.3. Energy distribution of fluence rate versus particle energy for 4 GCR particles and their  
 915 modification by solar activity (for solar minimum (1977) and solar maximum (1959)) at 1 AU as  
 916 relevant for radiological protection (Badhwar, 1997).  
 917

918  
 919 (26) Fluence rates of cosmic radiation are not constant; they vary between two extremes  
 920 which correspond in time with the maximum and minimum solar activity. Solar activity and  
 921 cosmic radiation fluence rates are inversely correlated. The slope of the energy distribution in  
 922 Fig. 2.3 for energies below some GeV/u is affected by this modulation of the cosmic  
 923 radiation fluence rate (Badhwar, 1997). It is caused by the solar magnetic field, which is  
 924 coupled to the solar wind. The solar wind is a continuous stream of highly-ionised plasma  
 925 emerging from the Sun. Its intensity depends on solar activity which can be described by the  
 926 number of observed sunspots. During the minimum of the 11-year solar cycle the solar wind  
 927 has a minimum strength and its effect on the energy distribution is smaller than at maximum  
 928 solar activity. Cosmic particles incident on the solar system interact with the solar magnetic  
 929 field and thus lose energy. This leads to flattened energy spectra at lower energies. With  
 930 increasing solar activity, the maximum of the fluence rate is shifted to higher particle  
 931 energies. At 100 MeV/u, the particle fluence rates differ by a factor of about 10 between  
 932 maximum and minimum solar activity conditions, whereas at about 4 GeV/u only a variation  
 933 of about 20% is observed.

934 (27) Monitoring of solar modulation is possible on Earth based on the fluence rate of  
 935 secondary neutrons produced in the Earth's atmosphere by interactions of galactic cosmic  
 936 radiation. This fluence rate has been measured over longer periods by different ground based  
 937 stations using neutron monitors. Figure 2.4 shows an example of data taken over several  
 938 years with the neutron monitor at Kiel University (NMDB, 2011). It can be seen that details  
 939 of the modulation seem to be unpredictable statistical fluctuations. However, maxima and  
 940 minima clearly appear inversely correlated to the 11-year solar cycle with a roughly

941 sinusoidal form around an average particle fluence rate. However, the magnitude of the  
 942 extremes again undergoes fluctuations. Predictions for future satellite missions are limited in  
 943 accuracy within a factor of two or even more based on such unpredictable fluctuations.  
 944



945  
 946 Fig. 2.4. Relative fluence rate variation of cosmic radiation (GCR) with time in the solar cycle of  
 947 the heliocentric potential measured by the neutron monitor in Kiel (NMDB, 2011).  
 948

949  
 950 **2.3 Solar cosmic radiation**

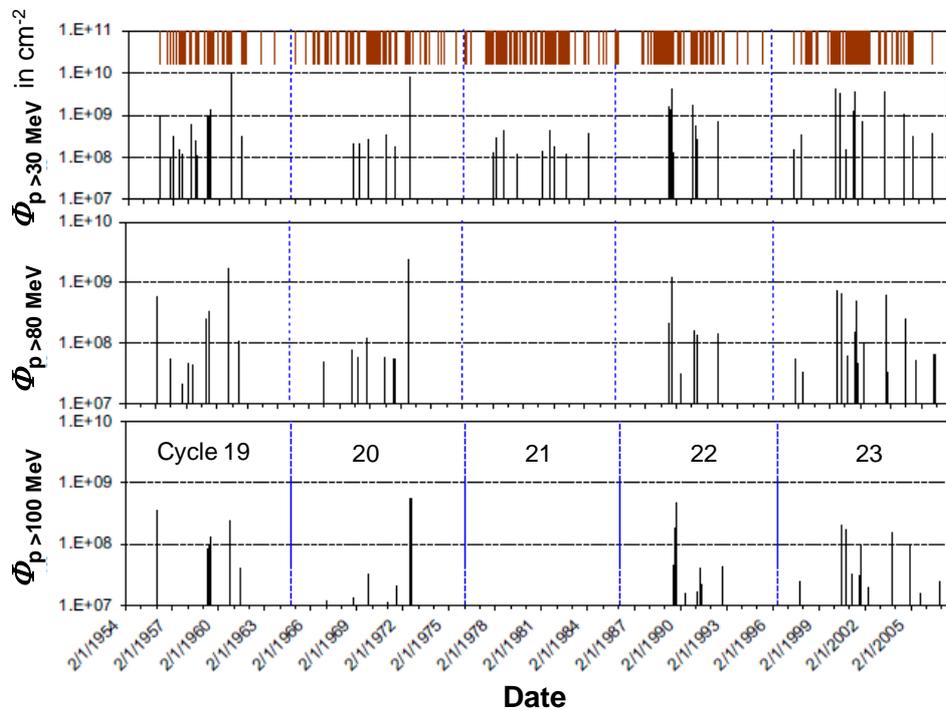
951  
 952 (28) Besides electromagnetic radiation, the Sun continuously emits particle radiation,  
 953 mainly consisting of protons and electrons, the solar wind. The intensities of these low  
 954 energy particles vary by 2 orders of magnitude between about some  $10^{10}$  and  $10^{12}$  particles  
 955  $\text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1} \text{sr}^{-1}$ . In terms of velocity, this particle stream is characterised by velocities between  
 956 about  $300 \text{ km s}^{-1}$  and  $800 \text{ km s}^{-1}$  and more. The particle energies, however, are so low (for  
 957 protons between 100 eV and 3.5 keV), that the particles will be stopped within the first few  
 958 microns of unshielded skin. They are, therefore, not of concern for radiation effects in man.

959 (29) Nevertheless, the temporal variation of the solar wind is a major driver which  
 960 determines radiation exposure from GCR in space, at least within the inner heliosphere. The  
 961 heliosphere itself can be defined as that domain of the interstellar space which the solar wind  
 962 can fill out. The magnetic field based on the solar wind provides a similar shielding as the  
 963 geomagnetic field does. The shielding strength can be simulated in terms of a pseudo-  
 964 electrostatic heliocentric potential against which the charged particles have to work when  
 965 entering the heliosphere from the local interstellar medium. This potential modifies the GCR  
 966 energy spectra to the same degree as the interplanetary magnetic field does.

967 (30) Occasionally, the surface of the Sun releases large amounts of energy in sudden  
 968 local outbursts of gamma radiation, hard and soft x-rays and radio waves in a wide frequency  
 969 band. In these solar particle events (SPEs), large currents and moving magnetic fields in the  
 970 solar corona accelerate solar matter. Coronal particles with energies up to several GeV escape  
 971 into the interplanetary space. They spiral around the interplanetary magnetic field lines.  
 972 Within the ecliptic plane, field lines expand from the Sun into the interplanetary medium like  
 973 the stream of water from a rotating garden hose. They connect the Earth with a certain spot  
 974 on the western part of the Sun. The number and energy distribution of particles observed in  
 975 solar particle events at Earth is different from GCR and depends on this connection. SPEs

976 show an enormous variability in particle fluence rates and energy distribution and have the  
 977 potential to expose space crew to high life-threatening doses

978 (31) An SPE well-connected with high particle fluence rates observed at Earth is an  
 979 infrequent event which is most likely to be observed during the period of increasing and  
 980 decreasing maximum solar activity. Therefore, major SPEs are observed at Earth as random  
 981 events with a low frequency, typically one per month. They last for several hours or days.  
 982 Events with significant fluence rates of protons with higher energies can be observed as  
 983 "ground-level events" (GLE) by neutron monitors. Figure 2.5 shows the number of GLEs  
 984 observed over the last solar cycles. Long gaps with no events can be seen during solar  
 985 minimum activity. Between the last GLE in cycle 21 and the first one in cycle 22 there was a  
 986 65 month quiet period which was followed by a sequence of 11 GLEs within one year with  
 987 approaching maximum of the present solar cycle.  
 988



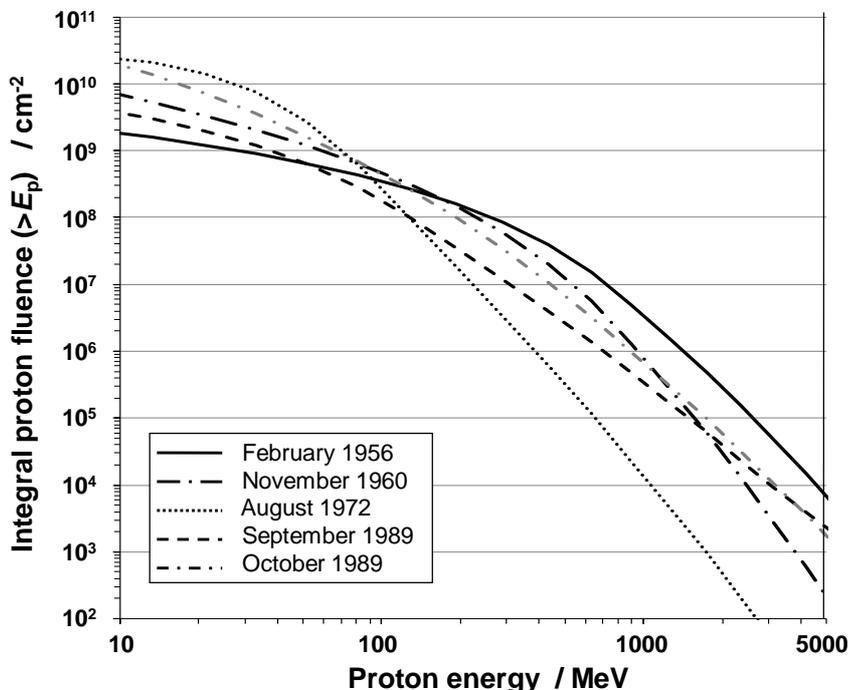
989 Fig. 2.5. Occurrence of major solar particle events in solar cycles No. 19 to 23 and the integral  
 990 particle fluence,  $\Phi_p$ , for protons with energies >30 MeV, >60 MeV, and >100 MeV (Kim et al., 2011).  
 991  
 992

993 (32) Since high energetic particles arrive first and are followed by particles of lower  
 994 energies, the energy distribution of SPE particles observed at Earth depends on time after  
 995 onset of the event. Above energies of about 10 MeV, SPE particle spectra following  
 996 approximately the power law  $I(E) = I_0 E^{-\gamma}$ . After the onset of the event, the exponent  $\gamma$   
 997 decreases with time. This means that the contribution by high-energy particles decreases with  
 998 time during the event. The constant  $I_0$ , describing the absolute number of particles, shows a  
 999 great deal of structure during the event caused by field irregularities and shock structures in  
 1000 the interplanetary medium.

1001 (33) Such events can induce adverse skin reactions in astronauts if they get caught  
 1002 outside shielding since above about 10 MeV protons can penetrate space suits and reach the  
 1003 skin or the lens of the eye. Depending on the particle intensities they may induce erythema or  
 1004 trigger late radiation cataracts within the lens of the eye. While the latter take several years to

1005 develop and hence pose no threat to a safe mission completion, severe erythema may well  
 1006 induce performance decrements which could compromise mission success.

1007 (34) Since 1955, five SPEs with intensities and energies large enough to jeopardise crew  
 1008 health behind normal or even enhanced spacecraft shielding have so far been observed. For  
 1009 these strong events integral fluence distributions (total number of particles per unit area  
 1010 above an energy  $E$ ) have been measured by satellite instruments (see Fig. 2.6). For a sixth  
 1011 event - that of February 23<sup>rd</sup> 1956 - the fluence distribution has been inferred from an  
 1012 analysis of the count rates of terrestrial neutron monitors which recorded the induced  
 1013 secondary neutrons. Such enhancements of neutron count rates are monitored in a worldwide  
 1014 net of neutron monitor stations a selected subset of which forms the so called Spaceship  
 1015 Earth. Ground level enhancement (GLE) events indicate that associated SPE protons with  
 1016 energies above about 450 MeV were sufficiently numerous to raise the neutron fluence rate at  
 1017 sea level by at least 5%.  
 1018



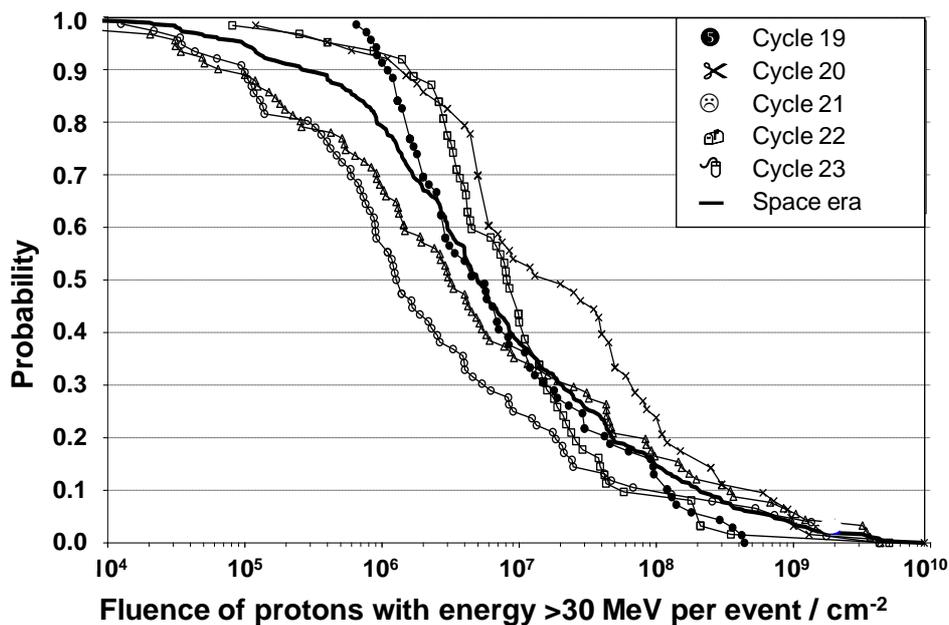
1019 Fig.2.6. Integral fluence spectra of protons from historical ‘worst-case’ solar particle events (Kim et  
 1020 al., 2010a).  
 1021  
 1022

1023 (35) A comprehensive list of GLE’s observed since February 23<sup>rd</sup> 1956 (GLE No. 5) and  
 1024 July 14<sup>th</sup> 2000 (GLE No. 59) together with all neutron monitor stations where these events  
 1025 were observed is provided by the Australian Antarctica Data Centre  
 1026 (<http://data.aad.gov.au/aadc/gle/events.cfm>). Among all these GLEs, the enhancement by  
 1027 GLE No. 5 in Leeds (lat.: 53.83 N, long.: 358.42 E, alt.: 100 m, Pc=2.20 GV) is about 4600%  
 1028 higher than the pre-event count rate, whereas for other SPEs the enhancement very rarely  
 1029 exceeds a 100% increase.

1030 (36) A small fluence rate of solar particles with low energies also reaches the Earth from  
 1031 SPEs at other positions of the Sun which are not fully directed to the Earth. These fluence  
 1032 rates add up to a solar component which dominates over the galactic component at energies  
 1033 below 30 MeV/u. Depending on the conditions of the interplanetary medium, this  
 1034 component undergoes fluctuations which are highly variable and unpredictable. During

1035 periods of maximum solar activity, when the fluence rate of galactic cosmic radiation is  
 1036 depressed and SPEs are more frequent, the contribution of the solar component is more  
 1037 significant.

1038 (37) For long-term mission planning, in addition to the magnitude that a worst case event  
 1039 can attain, the frequency of occurrence of events as well as the proton energy spectrum  
 1040 becomes important too. Fig. 2.7 gives a probability that a particle event with protons of  
 1041 energies above 30 MeV occur, based on the random nature of SPE occurrence and event size  
 1042 and based on the records taken for fluence measurements of the last five solar cycles.  
 1043



1044 Fig. 2.7. Probability of an SPE event with protons exceeding the energy of 30 MeV versus proton  
 1045 fluence per event for different cycles and for the complete space era (Kim et al., 2011).  
 1046  
 1047

1048  
 1049 **2.4 Trapped radiation**  
 1050

1051 (38) The radiation field around the Earth comprises the third radiation source. The  
 1052 particles trapped in the radiation belts discovered by van Allen are a result of the interaction  
 1053 of GCR and SCR with the Earth's magnetic field and the atmosphere. The radiation belts  
 1054 consist of electrons and protons, and some heavier ions. Electrons reach energies of up to 7  
 1055 MeV and protons up to 700 MeV. The energy of heavy ions is less than 50 MeV/u, and  
 1056 because of their limited penetration capacity, they are of no consequence for satellite  
 1057 electronics or radiological protection of humans. Charged particles with these energies  
 1058 moving into a dipole field can never enter into inner areas of this field. However, if they are  
 1059 put into this field for any reason, they are restricted to certain positions and cannot escape.  
 1060 They move in spirals along the geomagnetic field lines and are reflected back between the  
 1061 magnetic poles, acting as mirror points. Different processes contribute to fill in particles into  
 1062 the radiation belt and two main zones of captured particles are observed. The inner belt is  
 1063 mainly formed by decaying neutrons, coming from the atmosphere in which they are  
 1064 produced in cosmic particle interactions, and producing protons and electrons. The outer belt

1065 consists mainly of trapped solar particles, and is populated largely by electrons. During  
1066 disturbances of the magnetosphere by magnetic storms related to solar flares, where the  
1067 geomagnetic cut-off is usually depressed, particles of lower energies can penetrate from  
1068 outside towards the inner regions and fill them. The radiation belts extend over a distance  
1069 from Earth from about 200 km to about 75000 km around the geomagnetic equator. Energy  
1070 loss by cyclotron radiation and by penetration into the upper atmosphere near the  
1071 geomagnetic mirror points constitutes the major loss mechanisms for the trapped particle  
1072 population.

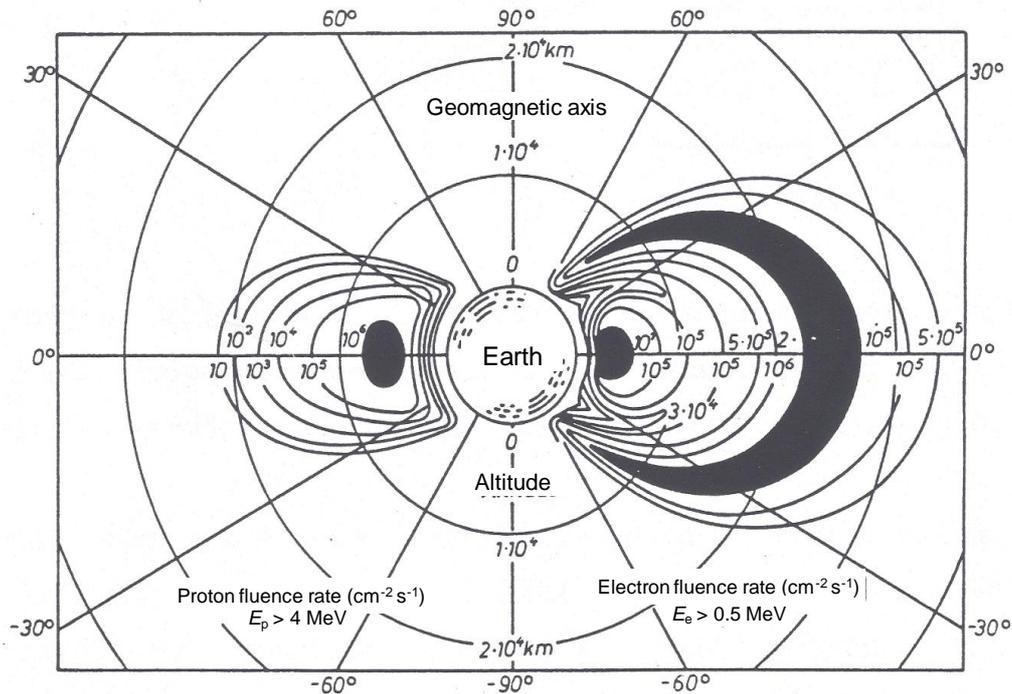
1073 (39) Extensive measurements during the recent decade with more advanced and  
1074 dedicated instrumentation on several satellites in well-coordinated orbits yielded the main  
1075 quantitative database which then became integrated in the AP-8 TRAPPED PROTON  
1076 MODEL (Sawyer et al., 1976) and which provides energy spectra of average proton fluence  
1077 rates during quiet magnetospheric conditions. A major application which these models have  
1078 been designed for is the assessment of the radiation exposure from trapped radiation during  
1079 manned low Earth orbit (LEO) missions such as presently on the International Space Station  
1080 (ISS). The AE-8 TRAPPED ELECTRON MODEL (Vette, 1991) serves the same purpose of  
1081 prediction radiation doses yet mainly for the radiation environment in geostationary orbits  
1082 where energetic electrons constitute the dominant source of ionising radiation.

1083 (40) An improved AE-9/AP-9 Model is being developed as part of the Proton  
1084 Spectrometer Belt Research (PSBR) Program and is planned to be released in near future by a  
1085 consortium of institutions, such as the National Reconnaissance Office (NRO), Aerospace  
1086 Cooperation, the Air Force Research Laboratory (AFRL), Los Alamos National Laboratory  
1087 (NAL) and the Naval Research Laboratory NRL).

1088 (41) There is a strong east-west effect in trapped proton fluence rates. At the bottom of  
1089 their path around the magnetic field lines, protons are travelling eastwards, whereas those on  
1090 the top of their path are travelling westwards. The westwards travelling particles have  
1091 emerged from a region of the atmosphere at lower altitude. Therefore, they encounter a  
1092 denser atmosphere and are more efficiently removed by interactions with the nuclei of the  
1093 atmosphere (Lenchek and Singer, 1962).

1094 (42) Figure 2.8 displays the spatial distribution of electron fluence rate for electron  
1095 energies above 0.5 MeV (right) and of proton fluence rate for proton energies above 34 MeV  
1096 (left) at which energy the latter are able to penetrate about  $1.4 \text{ g cm}^{-2}$  Al, the shielding  
1097 provided by lighter space craft. Proton fluence rates in the inner belt are intense and protons  
1098 reach sufficient energies to penetrate the shielding provided by walls and equipment of space  
1099 craft so that primarily their energy distribution as shown in Fig. 2.9 have to be known in  
1100 order to assess radiation exposures of astronauts. The data in Fig. 2.9 are the results of  
1101 measurements of the energy distribution of trapped proton fluence rate in the early 1960s  
1102 (Filius, 1965; Freden et al., 1964). As a natural coordinate system to specify the satellite  
1103 position within the geomagnetic field, the  $(B, L)$  coordinates are used. Here,  $B$  denotes the  
1104 magnetic field strength at a given point and  $L$  the altitude in units of Earth radii at which the  
1105 magnetic field line through this point intersects the plane through geomagnetic equator.

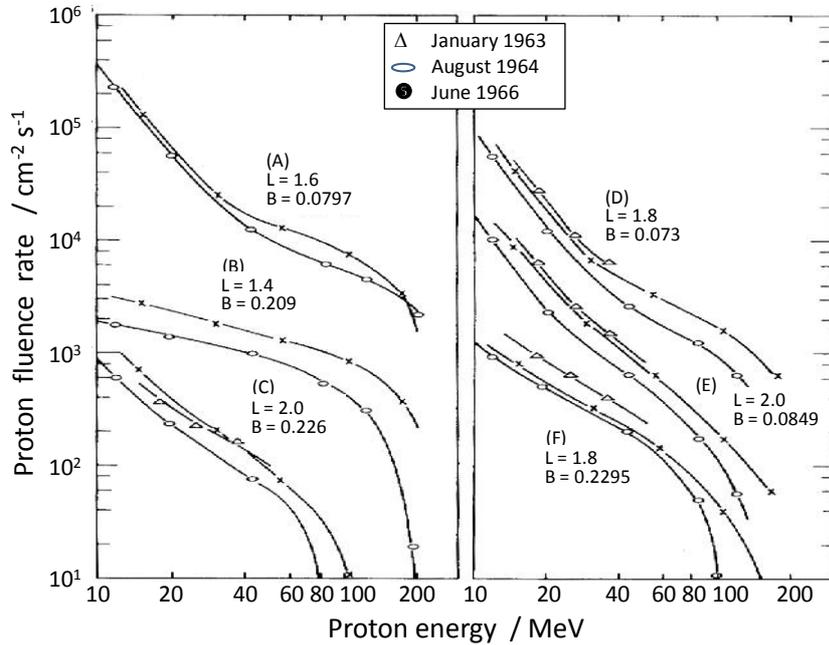
1106  
1107



1108  
 1109 Fig. 2.8. Fluence rates in inner and outer terrestrial radiation belts for trapped protons and  
 1110 electrons in  $\text{cm}^{-2} \text{s}^{-1}$  (Allkofer, 1975).  
 1111

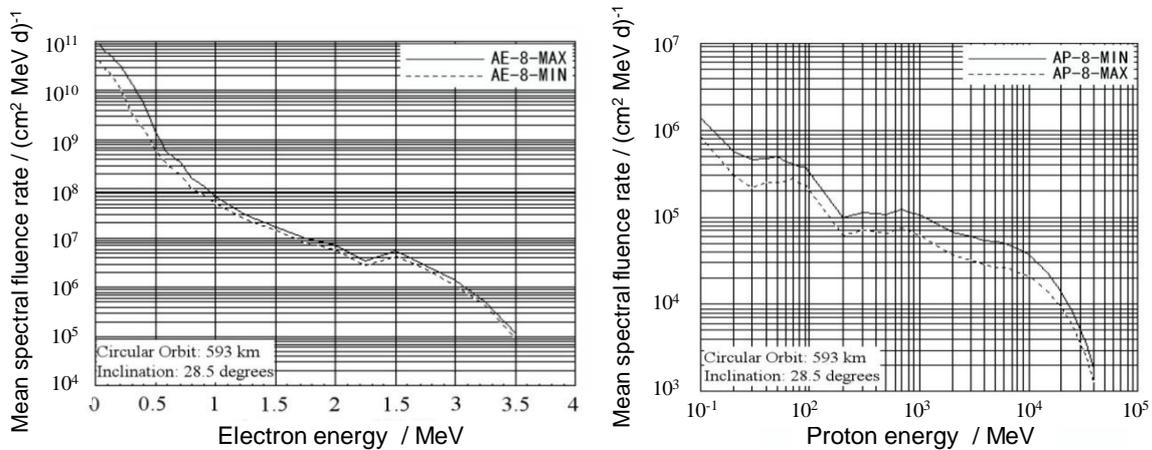
1112 (43) Figure 2.10 shows the fluence rate energy distributions of trapped electrons and  
 1113 protons averaged over the orbit of the Hubble Space Telescope. Electron fluence rates during  
 1114 solar maximum are greater than during solar minimum, pointing to the Sun as the dominant  
 1115 primary source which feeds the trapped electron population. In contrast, the trapped proton  
 1116 fluence rates reflect the (Forbush) modulation of the GCR intensity by the solar wind which  
 1117 results in higher intensities during solar minimum conditions.  
 1118

1119



1120  
1121  
1122

Fig. 2.9. Fluence rate spectra of inner belt protons measured at various locations within the belts as expressed in the  $B,L$ -coordinate system (Filius, 1965; Freden et al., 1964).



1123  
1124  
1125  
1126  
1127  
1128  
1129

Fig. 2.10. Left: Mean energy distribution of fluence rate of trapped electrons at solar minimum and maximum conditions calculated with the AE-8 model for the position of the Hubble space telescope (Jones, 2000). Right: Mean energy distribution of fluence rate of trapped protons at solar minimum and maximum conditions calculated with the AP-8 model for the position of the Hubble space telescope (Jones, 2000).

1130  
1131  
1132  
1133  
1134  
1135  
1136

(44) The fluence rates and energy distributions shown pertain to quiet magnetic conditions of the terrestrial and interplanetary magnetic field during the minimum and maximum of solar activity. In addition to the regular solar cycle variation, both magnetic storms and intensive fluence rates from energetic solar particle events (SPE) significantly shift positions and energies of trapped particle populations so that even additional though transient radiation belts can be created.

1137 (45) The trapped radiation is modulated by the solar cycle: with increasing solar activity,  
1138 proton intensity decreases, while electron intensity increases. Diurnal variations by a factor of  
1139 between 6 and 16 are observed in the outer electron belt, and short term variations due to  
1140 magnetic storms may raise the average fluence rate by two or three orders of magnitude. The  
1141 centre of the inner belt is quite stable, especially with respect to protons. However, at the  
1142 lower edge of the belt, electron and proton intensities may vary by up to a factor of 5. For the  
1143 majority of space missions in low Earth orbit (LEO), protons are an important part of the  
1144 radiation exposure inside spacecrafts. Because of their higher energies and correspondingly  
1145 longer range, their total dose surpasses that of electrons at shielding thickness above about  
1146  $0.3 \text{ g/cm}^2$  aluminum. At lower shielding, e.g. in case of extravehicular activities (EVA), the  
1147 absorbed dose to the skin is dominated by the electron contribution and may reach up to  
1148 10 mGy per day.

1149 (46) Of special importance for low Earth orbits is the so called 'South Atlantic Anomaly'  
1150 (SAA), at the moment a region over the coast of Brazil, where the radiation belt extends  
1151 down to altitudes of 200 km. This behaviour is due to an  $11^\circ$  inclination of the Earth's  
1152 geomagnetic dipole axis from its axis of rotation towards northern America and a 500 km  
1153 displacement of the dipole centre towards the western Pacific, with corresponding  
1154 significantly reduced field strength values. Radiation received in LEO at low inclinations  
1155 includes GCR and radiation due to passages through the SAA. At an orbit with  $28.5^\circ$   
1156 inclination, six orbital rotations per day pass through the anomaly, while nine per day do not.  
1157 Although traversing the anomaly takes less than about 15 min and occupies less than 10% of  
1158 the time in orbit, this region accounts for a significant fraction of total exposure.

1159 (47) In addition to the trapped charged particles in radiation belts, the GCRs are producing  
1160 secondary neutrons by nuclear reactions in the upper atmosphere of the Earth. Neutrons are  
1161 produced in practically two energy regions by two processes. Neutrons in the region between 1  
1162 and 10 MeV are mostly evaporation products of highly excited nuclei with a fairly isotropic  
1163 angular distribution. High-energy neutrons originate as knock-on neutrons mainly in peripheral  
1164 collisions or in charge exchange reactions of high-energy protons. Their energy distribution  
1165 peaks at about 100 MeV. They leak into the exosphere and contribute also to the exposure in  
1166 spacecraft. Measured neutron spectra in the Earth atmosphere are shown in Fig. 2.11. Their  
1167 contribution to the radiation field in LEO is, however, relatively low. A similar neutron field as  
1168 measured in the atmosphere is of course produced by interactions of the GCR with the  
1169 spacecraft material and the astronaut's body. This contribution to the exposure of astronauts is  
1170 substantial (Bartlett et al., 2006).

1171

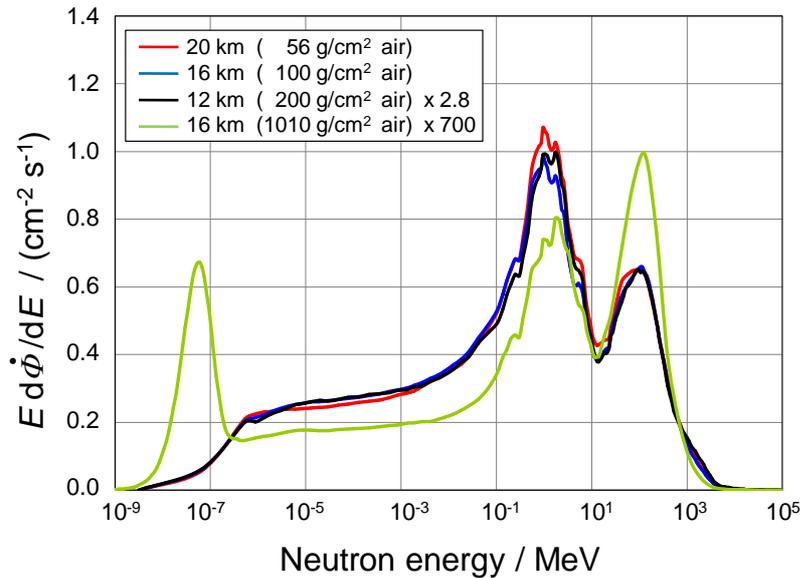


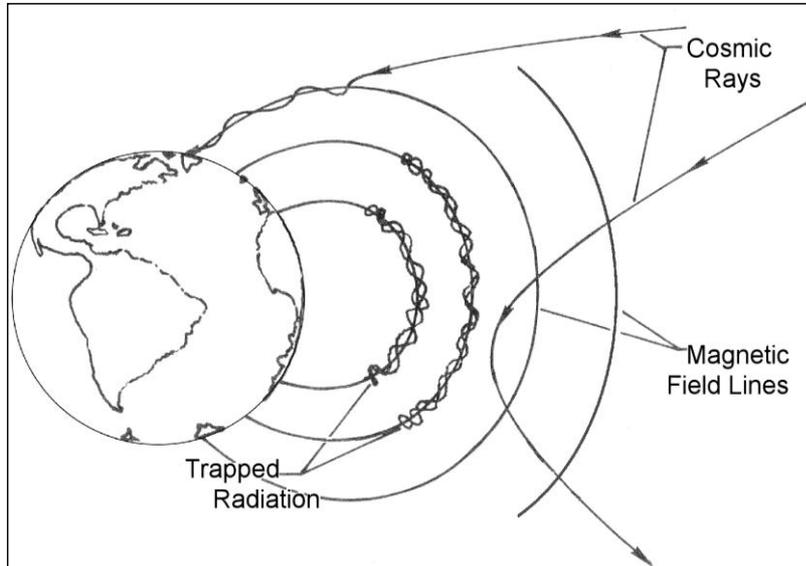
Fig. 2.11. Neutron spectra from cosmic radiation on ground and in different atmospheric depths at air flight altitudes measured with Bonner spheres during the AIR ER 2 flights and on the ground at sea level (Goldhagen et al., 2004).

## 2.5 Interaction with magnetic fields

(48) To reach spacecraft in low Earth orbits (LEO) a charged particle has to penetrate the Earth's magnetic field. Penetrability is a property related to the ions magnetic rigidity which is given by its momentum divided by its charge. All particles with the same rigidity follow a track with the same curvature in a given magnetic field. For each point inside the magnetosphere and each direction from that point, there exist a rigidity threshold below which the cosmic particles are not able to reach this point. This rigidity is called the geomagnetic cut-off rigidity and is proportional to the magnetic field component perpendicular to the direction of particle motion. For a particle moving towards the centre of Earth, for example, the cut-off rigidity has a maximum value at the equator, since the particle moves perpendicular to the field lines and the cut-off rigidity vanishes at the pole, since the particle moves in the direction of the field lines. Therefore, geomagnetic shielding is less effective for high inclination orbits than for low inclination orbits. This means that in low inclination orbits, only particles of high energy have access. Towards higher inclinations, additional particles of lower energies are observed. For a geomagnetic latitude  $\lambda$ , the vertical cut-off rigidity  $R_c$  can be calculated approximately by  $R_c = 14.9 \cos^4 \lambda / (r/r_e)^2$ , where  $r/r_e$  is the ratio of the distance  $r$  from the dipole centre to the Earth radius,  $r_e$ . The rigidity for particles arriving from other directions than vertical is dependent from the angle of incidence. Due to latitude dependent shielding, the number of particles incident in the altitude of orbiting spacecraft increases from lower inclinations towards higher inclinations.

(49) In LEO, as well as in aviation heights, a second shielding mechanism has to be incorporated into the transport of the primary GCR or SPE ions. Whereas the geomagnetic field on the one hand is responsible for the added radiation exposure in LEO from trapped radiation, it also causes a quite substantial reduction of radiation exposure, at least near the geomagnetic equator (which differs from the geographic equator). This stems from the

1205 deflection due to the Lorentz force of charged particles by the geomagnetic field as illustrated  
 1206 in Fig. 2.12.  
 1207



1208  
 1209 Fig. 2.12. Deflection and trapping of charged particles by the geomagnetic field (Spjeldvik et al.,  
 1210 1983).  
 1211

1212 (50) Figure 2.13 provides a global map of the vertical cut-off rigidities for the  
 1213 geomagnetic field model of Epoch 2000 (Smart et al., 2008). For a homogeneous dipole field,  
 1214 the iso-rigidity lines would be parallel to the (geomagnetic) equator. The marked asymmetry  
 1215 with a peak above 17 GV of the cut-off rigidity at the Indian Ocean (long. 90E, lat: 10N)  
 1216 reflects the offset from the geographic centre of the magnetic centre by about 450 km in this  
 1217 direction. At the opposite side, in the South Atlantic this offset results in the corresponding  
 1218 subsidence of the lower fringes of the inner proton belt creating thereby the so called South  
 1219 Atlantic Anomaly (SAA). This is the reason for the already mentioned fact that the bulk of  
 1220 radiation exposure in most LEOs is accumulated in this region.  
 1221  
 1222

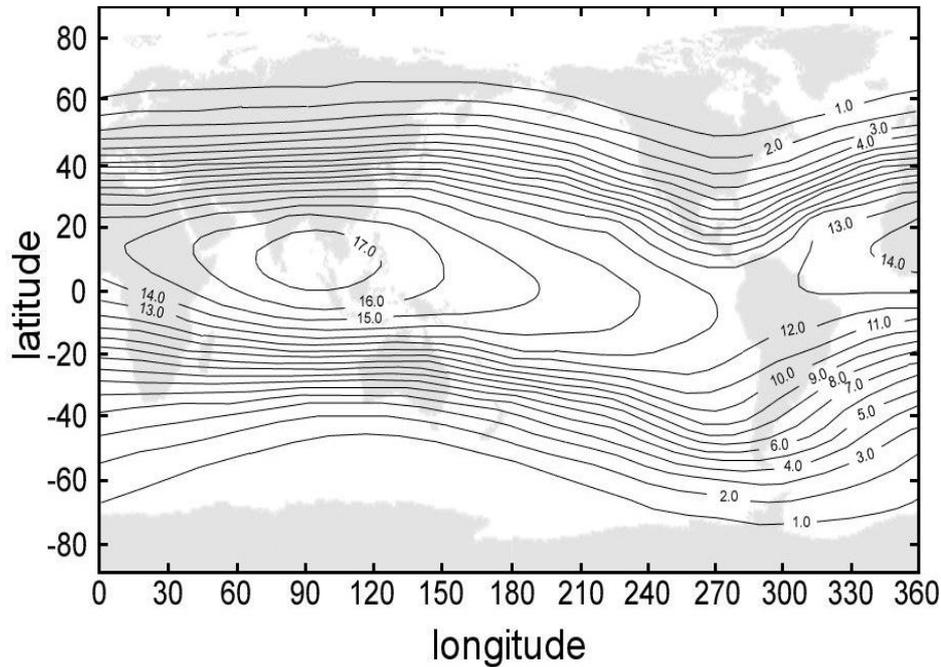
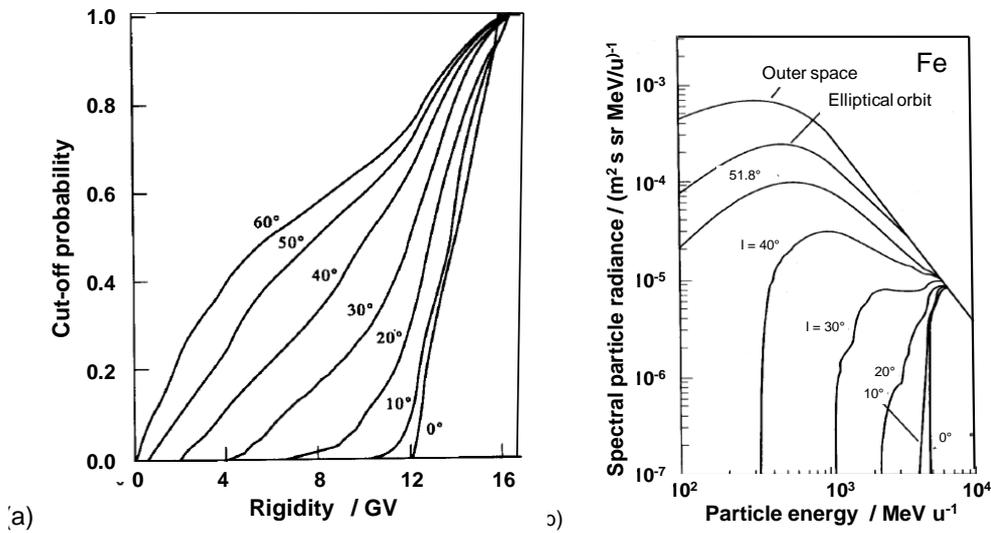


Fig. 2.13. Map of vertical cut-off rigidities in GV for the geomagnetic field model of Epoch 2000 (Smart et al., 2008).

1223  
1224  
1225  
1226  
1227  
1228  
1229  
1230  
1231  
1232  
1233  
1234  
1235

(51) For a given orbit, the shielding due to this effect is expressed by the geomagnetic transmission factor which specifies the fraction of the GCR or solar particle fluence rate of a given particle energy (or momentum given in units of  $\text{GeVc}^{-1}$ ) which has access to this orbit or by the cut-off rigidity probability which specifies the probability that a particle with a given rigidity reaches that orbit. Figure 2.14 (a) demonstrates the dependence of the geomagnetic shielding on the orbit inclination for a circular orbit at 223 km altitude. For an orbit of 28.5 degrees inclination which for a large fraction evades the SAA, on the average the GCR with a momentum below about  $4.2 \text{ GeV c}^{-1}$  do not reach that flight route.

1236



1237  
1238

Fig. 2.14. (a) Cut-off rigidity probability for different inclination for a circular orbit of 223 km (Heinrich et al., 1979).

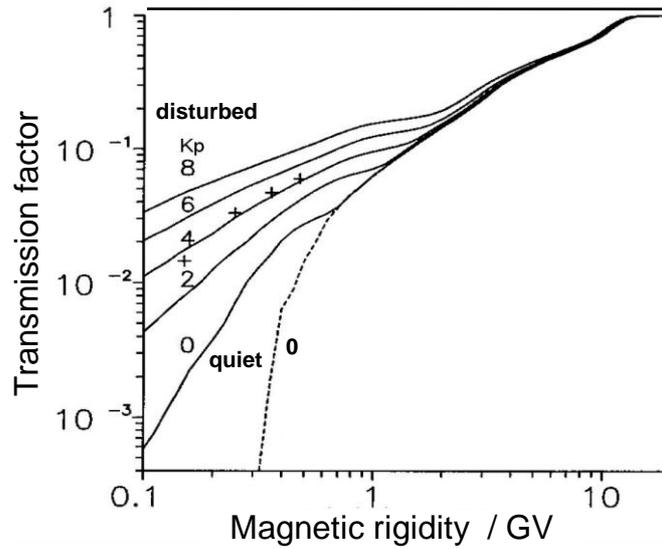
(b) Energy spectra of iron nuclei for outer space and for orbits in 223 km altitude of different inclinations (Heinrich et al., 1979).

1243

1244 (52) For a 45 degree inclination, this momentum threshold drops to about  $1.1 \text{ GeV c}^{-1}$ ,  
1245 whereas for polar orbits at least 20% of particles with the lowest energies always have access  
1246 to this altitude. On the other hand the shielding effect vanishes for ions with a momentum  
1247 above about  $15 \text{ GeV c}^{-1}$ , where at any inclination all charged ions reach this orbit. Figure 14  
1248 (b) shows the influence of the magnetic shielding on the particle spectra, e.g. for Fe, which  
1249 varies strongly with the different inclination. The functions in Fig. 2.14 do not, however,  
1250 include the shadow effect of the Earth itself.

1251 (53) The shadow effect of the Earth for the Hubble Space Telescope (HST) at 28.5  
1252 degree inclination reduces the fluence rate of even the most energetic GCR by about 30%. An  
1253 Earth observation satellite such as e.g. TERRA, on the other hand, must use a near polar orbit  
1254 and therefore can be accessed by charged particles of all energies. Its higher altitude also  
1255 slightly reduces the shielding by the Earth shadow. The high inclination of the International  
1256 Space Station (ISS) of 51.6 degree makes this manned spacecraft accessible to SPE ions of  
1257 100 MeV/u or above. This is particularly important, since in case of geomagnetic  
1258 disturbances which often accompany solar events, this geomagnetic shielding is further  
1259 reduced. Fig. 2.15 demonstrates this loss of geomagnetic shielding for the ISS for storms as  
1260 characterized by the  $K_p$  index of global geomagnetic activity (see:  
1261 [http://isgi.cetp.ipsl.fr/des\\_kp\\_ind.html](http://isgi.cetp.ipsl.fr/des_kp_ind.html)) which can vary between 0 and 9. Under conditions of  
1262 such storms a much larger fraction of SPE ions can reach the orbit of the ISS.

1263



1264  
 1265  
 1266  
 1267  
 1268  
 1269

Fig. 2.15. Calculated geomagnetic transmission functions for the ISS orbit versus magnetic rigidity for a quiet time geomagnetic field (dotted line) (IAGA, 1992) and for disturbed geomagnetic conditions (solid lines) as expressed by the  $K_p$  index (Nymmik, 1999). The crosses are the results from Boberg et al. (1993) for  $K_p = 5$ .

### 1270 3. QUANTITIES USED IN RADIOLOGICAL PROTECTION

1271

1272 (54) The description and quantification of exposure of humans to ionising radiation needs  
1273 the definition of specific quantities and units. For many years this has been performed by  
1274 ICRU and ICRP and the actual definitions can be found in their publications (ICRU, 1993;  
1275 2011 and ICRP, 2007). Human exposure to ionising radiation can occur from radiation  
1276 incident on the human body (external exposure) or from radionuclides incorporated in the  
1277 body (internal exposure). For exposure of astronauts in space, internal exposure is of very  
1278 little relevance and therefore this chapter concentrates on the concept of quantities relevant  
1279 for external radiation exposure.

1280 (55) In the past, the definition of the specific quantities for radiological protection has  
1281 mainly considered occupational and public exposure situations on Earth concentrating on  
1282 human exposures by photons, electrons and neutrons, and also  $\alpha$ -particles in internal  
1283 exposure. In addition, the protection quantities are defined for application in situations of low  
1284 dose and low dose rates. Limits are given in terms of these quantities in order to limit the  
1285 probability of the occurrence of stochastic detriments to humans to an acceptable level and to  
1286 avoid deterministic effects (tissue reactions).

1287 (56) The exposure situation in space is different from that on Earth mainly due to the  
1288 strong differences in the radiation fields (see Chapter 2) and to the higher environmental dose  
1289 rate in space than on Earth whereby the likelihood of stochastic effects are increased and  
1290 deterministic effects cannot be excluded. The high contribution of heavy ions in GCR and  
1291 secondary radiation to doses in the human body needs to be considered in particular.

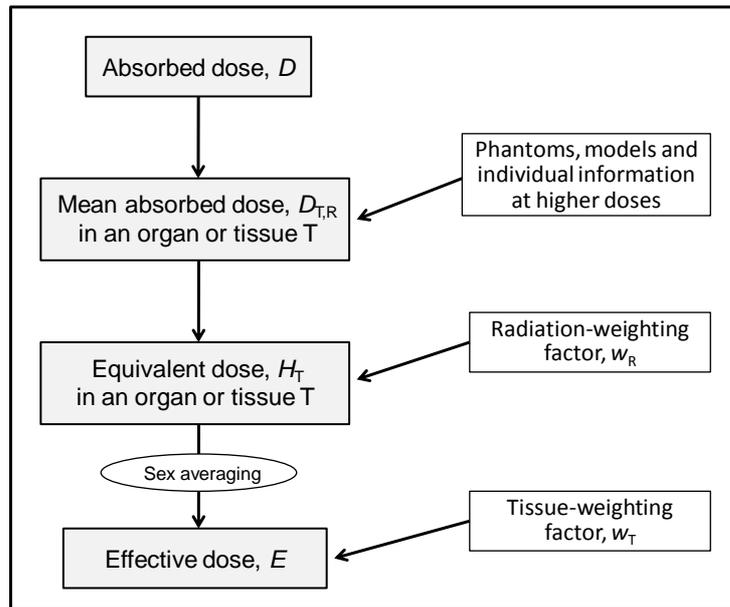
1292 (57) The consequences for the definition of appropriate radiation protection quantities for  
1293 use in space situations are considered in the following sections. Organizations active in space  
1294 missions have defined detailed procedures for the assessment of human exposure in space  
1295 since long time (see e.g. NCRP 2000; 2002). In principle, they are interested not only in the  
1296 determination of individual doses, but in the assessment of individual radiation risks based  
1297 on such doses and this has some consequences for the definition of dose quantities. The  
1298 astronauts can be treated as single persons, or as members of small groups. Information on  
1299 sex and age can be applied and better information on the astronaut's organ size and shape  
1300 might be available, and there may be the possibility of applying individual sensitivity factors  
1301 to the assessed organ doses if specific individual risks need to be determined (Atwell, 1994;  
1302 Bahadori et al., 2011; Bahadori et al., 2012).

1303

#### 1304 3.1 Dose quantities in radiological protection

1305

1306 (58) In radiological protection, the system of dose quantities defined by ICRP and ICRU  
1307 (ICRP, 1991; ICRP, 2007; ICRU, 1993) and generally used in situations on Earth and in  
1308 usual aviation altitudes includes protection quantities and operational quantities. Protection  
1309 quantities (e.g. equivalent dose in an organ or tissue, effective dose) are based on mean  
1310 absorbed doses to the organs and tissues of the human body and can be related to the risks of  
1311 ionising radiation exposure. The ICRP system of protection quantities is shown in Fig. 3.1  
1312 (ICRP, 2007).



1313  
1314

1315 Fig. 3.1. Dose quantities for radiological protection (protection quantities) recommended by the  
1316 Commission (ICRP, 2007).

1317

1318 (59) Operational quantities (e.g. ambient dose equivalent or personal dose equivalent) are  
1319 defined for use in measurements which often enable an assessment of effective dose or mean  
1320 doses in organs or tissues of humans which are generally not measurable.

1321 (60) In radiation biology, clinical radiology, and radiological protection the absorbed  
1322 dose,  $D$ , is the fundamental physical dose quantity. It is used for all types of ionising radiation  
1323 and any irradiation geometry.

1324 (61) Absorbed dose,  $D$ , is defined as the quotient of  $d\bar{\epsilon}$  by  $dm$ , where  $d\bar{\epsilon}$  is the mean  
1325 energy, imparted by ionising radiation to matter of mass  $dm$ , thus

1326

$$D = \frac{d\bar{\epsilon}}{dm} \quad (3.1)$$

1327 The SI unit is  $\text{J kg}^{-1}$  and its special name is gray (Gy). Absorbed dose takes account of the  
1328 radiation field inside and outside the specified volume of mass  $dm$  and hence of all charged  
1329 particles which were produced in or enter that volume. Its value is derived from the mean  
1330 value of the stochastic quantity of energy imparted,  $\epsilon$ , and does not reflect the random  
1331 fluctuations of the interaction events in tissue. Generally, absorbed dose is a measurable  
1332 quantity and primary standards exist to allow its determination by measurement.

1333

### 1334 3.1.1 Protection quantities

1335

1336 (62) Generally, radiological protection is concerned with controlling exposures to  
1337 ionising radiation so that tissue reactions are prevented and the detriment from stochastic  
1338 effects is limited to accepted levels. The fundamental *protection quantities* are based on  
1339 absorbed doses imparted to organs and tissues of the human body. These quantities are  
1340 designed to allow quantification of the exposure to ionising radiation from both whole and  
1341 partial body irradiation (ICRP, 1991; 2007). The estimated doses can then be compared with

1342 recommended dose limits for e.g. occupationally exposed people or at higher doses mean  
 1343 absorbed doses in organs and tissues may be used for the assessment of risk of cancer or  
 1344 other detriments.

1345 (63) **Mean absorbed dose in an organ or tissue** In radiological protection, the main  
 1346 interest is not directed to the absorbed dose at a point in the human body, but to the absorbed  
 1347 dose averaged over a tissue or organ volume. The mean absorbed dose,  $D_{T,R}$ , in an organ or  
 1348 tissue T due to a radiation of type R is the basic quantity for the definition of the protection  
 1349 quantities equivalent dose and effective dose used for describing exposures at low doses and  
 1350 dose rates where stochastic effects are dominant. In a mixed radiation field the mean  
 1351 absorbed dose,  $D_T$ , in an organ or tissue T is given by

1352 
$$D_T = \sum_R D_{T,R} \quad . \quad (3.2)$$

1353 (64) The mean absorbed dose is not always representative of the local absorbed dose  
 1354 throughout an organ or tissue, e. g. for low-penetrating radiation. For strongly-penetrating  
 1355 radiation, however, the absorbed dose distribution within most organs may be sufficiently  
 1356 homogeneous and thus the mean absorbed dose is mostly a suitable measure of the dose  
 1357 throughout the organ or tissue.

1358 (65) **Equivalent dose in an organ or tissue** The protection quantity *equivalent dose in*  
 1359 *an organ or tissue*,  $H_T$ , is defined by

1360 
$$H_T = \sum_R w_R D_{T,R} \quad (3.3)$$

1361 where  $w_R$  is the radiation weighting factor for radiation R which considers the differences in  
 1362 the radiobiological effectiveness of different radiations (details see Section 3.2.2) and  $D_{T,R}$   
 1363 the average absorbed dose in the volume of a specified organ or tissue, T, due to the radiation  
 1364 of type R. The radiation R is given by the type and in the case of neutrons the energy of  
 1365 radiation either incident on the body or emitted by radionuclides residing within the body.  
 1366 The sum is performed over all types of radiations involved. The unit of equivalent dose is J  
 1367  $\text{kg}^{-1}$  and has the special name sievert (Sv). Equivalent doses,  $H_T^M$  and  $H_T^F$ , are specified in  
 1368 male and female bodies represented by male and female reference voxel phantoms.

1369 (66) **Effective dose** The effective dose,  $E$ , introduced in Publication 60 (ICRP, 1991) and  
 1370 again defined in Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007) as:

1371 
$$E = \sum_T w_T H_T \quad (3.4)$$

1372 where  $w_T$  is the tissue weighting factor for organ or tissue T representing the relative  
 1373 contribution of that organ or tissue to the total health detriment resulting from uniform  
 1374 irradiation of the body at low doses and dose rates. It is  $\sum w_T = 1$ . The sum is performed over  
 1375 14 organs and tissues of the human body individually considered in the definition of  $E$  and  
 1376 for which specific  $w_T$  values are given in Table 3.1 and an additional remainder tissue  
 1377 representing a mean value of further tissues (14 tissues, but only 13 tissues for each gender)  
 1378 (see Table 3.1).

1379 (67) The unit of effective dose is  $\text{J kg}^{-1}$  with the special name sievert (Sv). The same unit  
 1380 is also used for the operational dose quantities. Care must be taken in ensuring that the  
 1381 quantities being used are clearly stated.

1382 (68) In the calculation of effective dose the equivalent doses  $H_T$  are taken as the mean  
 1383 values averaged over the male and female organs and tissues:

1384 
$$H_T = 0.5(H_T^M + H_T^F). \tag{3.5}$$

1385 (69) The concept of tissue weighting factors has been introduced already in 1977 (ICRP,  
 1386 1977), extended in 1991 (ICRP, 1991) and further modified in 2007 (ICRP, 2007). The  
 1387 values of  $w_T$  for the specified tissues and organs are based on the detriment due to stochastic  
 1388 effects after radiation exposure and on judgments. They represent mean values for humans  
 1389 averaged over all ages and both sexes.

1391 Table 3.1. Tissue weighting factors,  $w_T$  (ICRP, 2007)

Organ/Tissue	$w_T$	Total Contribution
Lung, Stomach, Colon, Bone marrow, Breast, Remainder	0.12	0.72
Gonads	0.08	0.08
Thyroid, Oesophagus, Bladder, Liver	0.04	0.16
Bone surface, Skin, Brain, Salivary glands	0.01	0.04

1392 Notes:

- 1393 1. The  $w_T$  for gonads is applied to the mean of the doses to testes and ovaries.  
 1394 2. The dose to the colon is taken to be the mass-weighted mean of ULI and LLI doses, as in the Publication 60 formulation.  
 1395 The specified remainder tissues (14 in total, 13 in each sex) are: Adrenals, Extrathoracic tissue (ET), Gall bladder,  
 1396 Heart, Kidneys, Lymphatic nodes, Muscle, Oral mucosa, Pancreas, Prostate(♂), Small intestine (SI), Spleen, Thymus,  
 1397 Uterus/cervix (♀).

1398  
 1399 (70) The use of effective dose allows exposures in very different situations (e.g. internal  
 1400 and external exposure by different types of radiation and inhomogeneous exposures of the  
 1401 body) to be combined and results in a single dose value which considerably simplifies the  
 1402 specification of exposure limits. Effective dose, however, is not designed as a quantity  
 1403 considering individual properties of a specific person and should, therefore, not be applied for  
 1404 an assessment of radiations risks of a single person.

1405  
 1406 **3.1.2 Operational dose quantities**

1407  
 1408 (71) The protection quantities defined by mean organ or tissue doses in the human body  
 1409 are not measurable in practice and, therefore, cannot be used as quantities in radiation  
 1410 monitoring. For radiation measurements in situations of external exposure (area or individual  
 1411 monitoring) specific operational dose quantities have been defined by ICRU (ICRU 1985;  
 1412 1988; 1993; 2001). In monitoring at low doses the values of these quantities are taken as  
 1413 sufficiently accurate assessments of effective dose or skin dose, respectively, if their values  
 1414 are below the recommended limits for occupational exposure.

1415 (72) The basis for the definition of the operational quantities is the quantity dose  
 1416 equivalent,  $H$ , defined by

1417 
$$H = Q D \tag{3.6}$$

1418 where  $D$  is the absorbed dose at the point of interest in tissue and  $Q$  the corresponding mean  
 1419 quality factor due to the charged particles at that point.

1420 (73) For the different tasks of monitoring of external exposures the following scheme can  
 1421 be used for describing the application of the different operational dose quantities (ICRP,  
 1422 2007)

1423  
1424

Task	Operational dose quantities for	
	area monitoring	individual monitoring
Control of effective dose	ambient dose equivalent, $H^*(10)$	personal dose equivalent, $H_p(10)$
Control of doses to the skin, the hands and feet	directional dose equivalent, $H'(0.07, \Omega)$	personal dose equivalent, $H_p(0.07)$
Control of doses to the lens of the eye	directional dose equivalent, $H'(3, \Omega)$	personal dose equivalent, $H_p(3)$

1425

(74) The operational quantities for area monitoring at a location in a radiation field are defined by the dose equivalent at a point in a simple phantom, the ICRU sphere. It is a sphere of tissue-equivalent material (30 cm in diameter, ICRU (soft) tissue with density:  $1 \text{ g cm}^{-3}$ , and mass composition: 76.2 % oxygen, 11.1 % carbon, 10.1 % hydrogen and 2.6 % nitrogen). These quantities are defined to be point quantities fulfilling the condition of being additive with respect to the different components of the radiation field at the point of interest. For its definition the terms “*expanded*” and “*aligned*” radiation field are introduced (see Glossary) and the value of the quantity is given by the dose in a point at a fixed depth in the sphere. The sphere is hypothetical, a mathematical construct for the determination of the values of the quantities for area monitoring.

1436

**Ambient dose equivalent,  $H^*(10)$**

(75) For area monitoring the operational quantity for assessing effective dose is the ambient dose equivalent,  $H^*(10)$ , defined by (ICRU 2001):

The *ambient dose equivalent*,  $H^*(10)$ , at a point in a radiation field, is the dose equivalent that would be produced by the corresponding expanded and aligned field in the ICRU sphere at a depth of 10 mm on the radius vector opposing the direction of the aligned field.

(76) In most practical situations on Earth ambient dose equivalent provides a conservative estimate of effective dose a person would receive at that position. This, however, may not be the case for persons in high energy radiation fields, e.g. in cosmic radiation fields (Pelliccioni, 1998).

1447

**Directional dose equivalent,  $H'(d, \Omega)$**

(77) For area monitoring the quantity for assessing the dose to the skin and the extremities (hands, arms, feet) and the dose to the lens of the eye, the operational quantity is the directional dose equivalent,  $H'(d, \Omega)$  defined by:

The *directional dose equivalent*,  $H'(d, \Omega)$ , at a point in a radiation field, is the dose equivalent that would be produced by the corresponding expanded field in the ICRU sphere at a depth,  $d$ , on a radius in a specified direction,  $\Omega$ .

(78) For assessing the dose to the skin and the extremities  $d = 0.07 \text{ mm}$  is used and  $H'(d, \Omega)$  is then written  $H'(0.07, \Omega)$ . In case of monitoring the dose to the lens of the eye the quantity  $H'(3, \Omega)$  with  $d = 3 \text{ mm}$  was recommended by ICRU.

1458

1459 **Personal dose equivalent,  $H_p(d)$**

1460 (79) Individual monitoring of external exposure is usually performed with personal  
1461 dosimeters worn on the body and the operational quantity defined for this application takes  
1462 this situation into account. For individual monitoring the operational quantity is the personal  
1463 dose equivalent,  $H_p(d)$ .

1464 The *personal dose equivalent*,  $H_p(d)$ , is the dose equivalent in ICRU (soft) tissue (see  
1465 Section 4.3) at an appropriate depth,  $d$ , below a specified point on the human body.

1466 (80) The specified point is usually given by the position where the personal dosimeter is  
1467 worn. For the assessment of effective dose a depth  $d = 10$  mm and for assessing equivalent  
1468 dose to the skin and to the hands and feet a depth  $d = 0.07$  mm is recommended. In special  
1469 cases of monitoring the dose to the lens of the eye a depth  $d = 3$  mm has been proposed to be  
1470 appropriate.

1471

1472 **3.2 Description of radiation quality**

1473

1474 (81) The biological effectiveness of ionising radiation with respect to the induction of  
1475 cancer or other tissue reactions in the human body and of hereditary effects depends on the  
1476 type and energy of the radiation, on the tissue type exposed, on the dose and dose rate applied  
1477 to the tissue and on the detriment considered. The induced effects differ also in the latency  
1478 time between the exposure and the occurrence of the effects.

1479 (82) In radiological protection the effectiveness at low doses and dose rates are mainly of  
1480 interest. For these doses and dose rates the stochastic effects - cancer induction and hereditary  
1481 effects - are important and the standard approach in radiological protection is that the shape  
1482 of the dose-response relationship at low doses and dose rates is based on the model that the  
1483 probability of a stochastic effect is proportional to the applied dose (linear-non-threshold  
1484 model (LNT)) (ICRP, 2005).

1485 (83) At higher doses, however, when non-stochastic effects (deterministic effects, tissue  
1486 reactions) may occur, LNT is not an acceptable approximation. Tissue reactions occur always  
1487 above a dose threshold. The threshold dose value depends on the type of the tissue reaction  
1488 and is mostly above an applied absorbed dose of 0.5 - 2 Gy.

1489 (84) In principle, for risk estimates from exposure by different types of ionising radiation,  
1490 the absolute values of biological effectiveness of radiation with respect to the induced effect  
1491 need to be known. The mostly used procedure of taking care of the differences in the  
1492 biological effectiveness, however, is to use risk factors for a reference radiation (usually  
1493 photons) and to consider the differences of other types of radiation by applying a factor  
1494 *relative biological effectiveness* (RBE) which has already been introduced by Failla and  
1495 Henshaw in 1931 (Failla et al., 1931) and is discussed in detail in ICRP Publication 92  
1496 (ICRP, 2003). While RBE-values always depend on the biological endpoint considered and  
1497 on dose and dose rate applied, for the definition of quantities in radiological protection a  
1498 single set of radiation weighting factors and radiation quality factors has been chosen (ICRP,  
1499 2007) based on data at low doses and dose rates. This is further discussed in the next sections.

1500

1501 **3.2.1 Relative biological effectiveness**

1502

1503 (85) In radiobiology the differences in the effectiveness of the different ionising  
1504 radiations have led to the definition of the *relative biological effectiveness* (RBE). RBE  
1505 values are given as the ratio of the absorbed doses of two types of radiation producing the

1506 same specified biological effect under identical irradiation conditions (dose value of a  
1507 reference radiation divided by the corresponding dose value of the considered radiation at the  
1508 same level of the specified biological effect). RBE values depend on the conditions of  
1509 exposure including the biological effect investigated, the tissue or cell type exposed, the dose  
1510 and dose rate, and the dose fractionation scheme. Therefore, for a given type of radiation,  
1511 experimental investigations often provide a large range of RBE values (ICRP, 2003). As the  
1512 basis for selecting radiation weighting factors (see 3.2.2), RBE values with respect to  
1513 stochastic effects (cancer induction and hereditary effects) are of main interest. Usually RBE-  
1514 values increases with decreasing dose and dose rate and are believed to reach maximum  
1515 values ( $RBE_M$ ) at low doses and low dose rates.  $RBE_M$ -values are most relevant for  
1516 radiological protection applications. In ICRP Publication 92 (2003), different methods are  
1517 discussed to determine  $RBE_M$  at low doses and dose rates. The discussion includes various  
1518 types of high-LET radiation, e.g. protons, neutrons and  $\alpha$ -particles. For heavy ions, however,  
1519 very limited data were available at that time.

1520 (86) Generally, low-LET radiation is taken as reference radiation, mostly high-energy x-  
1521 rays or  $\gamma$ -rays from  $^{60}\text{Co}$  or  $^{137}\text{Cs}$ . There are, however, substantial differences in the biological  
1522 effectiveness of photons of different energy (Schmidt et al., 2002). Nevertheless, there exists  
1523 no international recommendation on defining a specific photon source as a general reference  
1524 radiation. This has the consequence that a broad range of experimental data with photons has  
1525 been used as a basis for the definition of radiation weighting and quality factors (ICRP,  
1526 2003).

1527 (87) While on the one hand  $RBE_M$ -values are the basis for the definition of radiation  
1528 weighting factors and the  $Q(L)$ -function, on the other hand, RBE-values are used for the  
1529 assessment of radiation risks from human exposures by different types end energies of  
1530 radiation. A risk factor for the radiation and tissue of interest is obtained by multiplying the  
1531 risk factor for the reference radiation, e.g. photons, by the corresponding RBE-value. An  
1532 uncertainty for risk assessment, however, comes in, because RBE-values are often  
1533 determined by investigating biological effects in single cells or small animals at higher doses,  
1534 while radiation risks are assessed for stochastic effects, e.g. cancer induction and hereditary  
1535 effects, in humans.

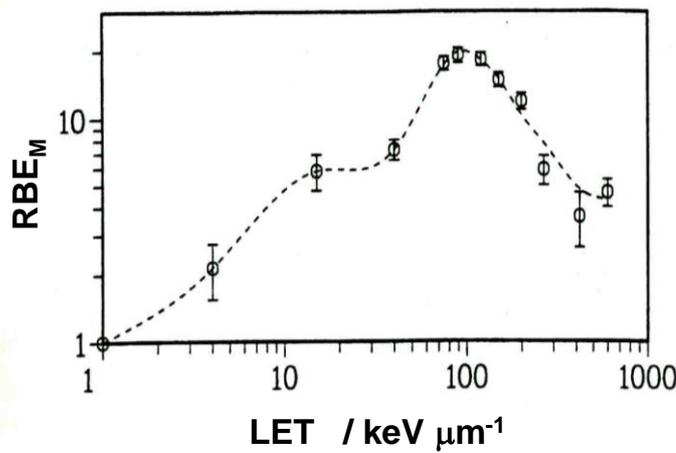
1536 (88) The biological effectiveness of ionising radiation is known to be correlated with its  
1537 energy deposition properties along the tracks of charged particles, especially with the  
1538 ionisation density along their tracks. For applications in radiological protection, the complex  
1539 structure of the charged particle tracks in tissue is characterized by a single parameter only,  
1540 the unrestricted linear energy transfer,  $L_\infty$ , (often denoted linear energy transfer, LET or  $L$ ).  
1541 Unrestricted linear energy transfer,  $L_\infty$  means that the transfer energy includes the energies of  
1542 all emitted  $\delta$ -electrons independent of their range, while restricted LET,  $L_\Delta$ , means that only  
1543  $\delta$ -electrons with energies of less than  $\Delta$  are considered. In general, LET is not simply related  
1544 to the biological effectiveness because, for example, ions of different Z show different  
1545 effectiveness at the same LET-value (Cucinotta et al., 2000a).

1546 (89) The study of the LET-dependence of RBE is concentrated on the study of radiation  
1547 effects in single cells by irradiating thin cell samples with charged particles of various types  
1548 and energies. In animal experiments, however, with long ranges of charged particles in the  
1549 tissue, the LET-dependence of an effect, e.g. cancer induction, is more difficult to study.

1550 (90) While for neutrons and alpha particles a broad range of experimental data to many  
1551 different biological endpoints exists including data from animals (NCRP, 1990; ICRP, 2003),  
1552 the situation for high-energy charged particles is more problematic. Epidemiological data on  
1553 cancer induction in humans from exposure to high-energy particles and heavy ions are not

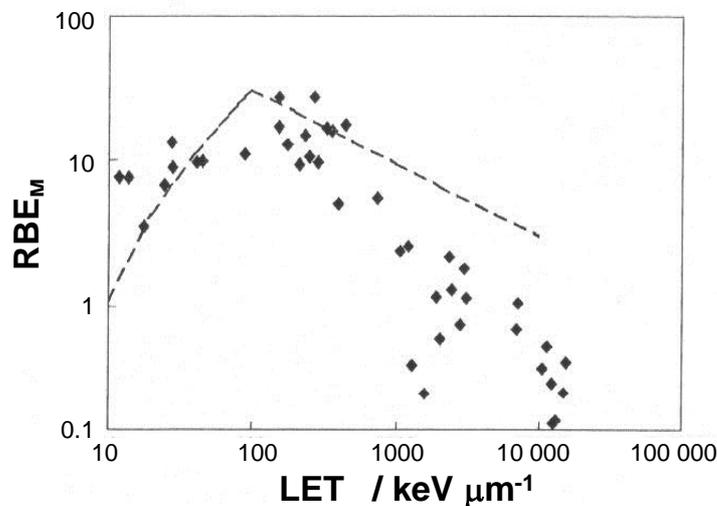
1554 available and experimental data on cancer induction in animals are scarce (ICRP, 2003).  
 1555 Most RBE data for high-energy protons and heavy ions have been obtained by experiments  
 1556 with cells at high doses ( $> 1\text{Gy}$ ) and high dose rates which are of particular interest for  
 1557 heavy-ion radiotherapy applications (Taucher-Scholz et al., 1999, George et al., 2003,  
 1558 Durante, 2002) with only a few studies of tumors in mice (Fry et al., 1985, Alpen et al., 1993,  
 1559 Weil et al., 2009).

1560 (91) Experimental data of RBE versus LET have been obtained for various biological  
 1561 endpoints. The general shape of the RBE-LET relationship is always similar. At low LET-  
 1562 values there is an increase in RBE with increasing LET up to about 100 to 150  $\text{keV}/\mu\text{m}$  and  
 1563 for higher LET-values, RBE decreases with increasing LET. Figures 3.2 to 3.4 show some  
 1564 typical examples of RBE-LET relationships obtained for different biological endpoints.  
 1565



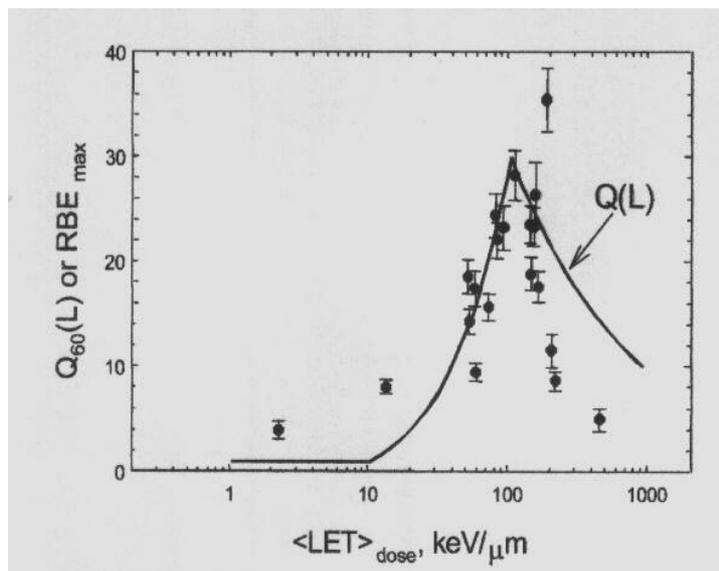
1566 Fig. 3.2. RBE<sub>M</sub> versus LET for oncogene transformations in C3H10T1/2 cells of embryos of mice  
 1567 (Brenner et al., 1992).  
 1568  
 1569

1570  
1571



1572  
1573  
1574  
1575  
1576

Fig. 3.3.  $RBE_M$  versus LET for the induction of mutations at the hprt locus in Chinese hamster V79 cells. Data are from Kiefer et al. (1999, 2001). The dotted line shows the  $Q(L)$  function as defined in ICRP Publication 60 (ICRP, 1991).

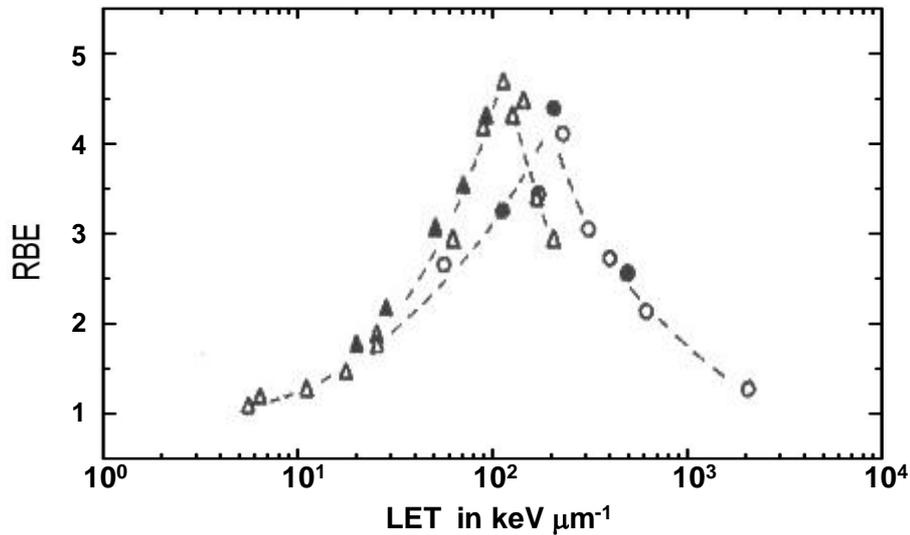


1577  
1578  
1579  
1580  
1581  
1582  
1583  
1584  
1585  
1586  
1587  
1588

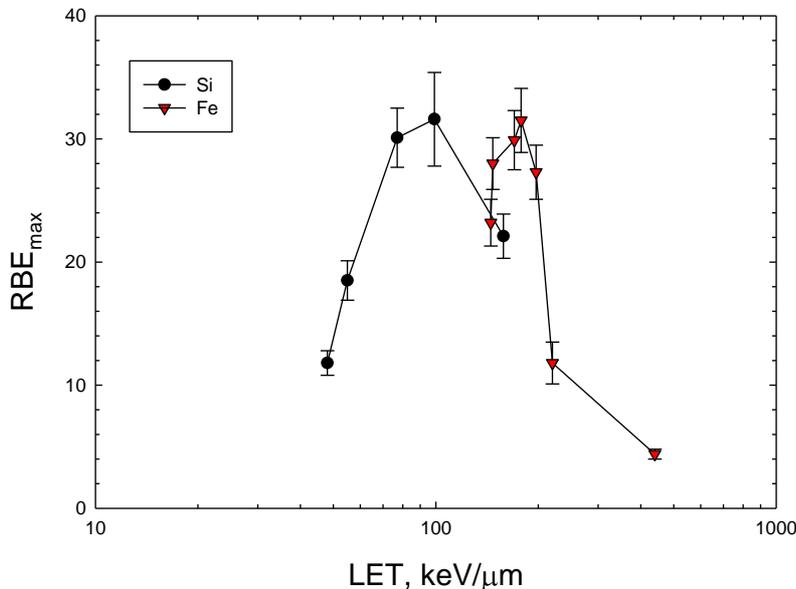
Fig. 3.4.  $RBE_M$  versus LET for total chromosomal exchanges measured within the first cell cycle using the premature chromosome condensation (PCC) method (George et al., 2007, Cucinotta et al., 2008). The line shows the  $Q(L)$  function as defined in ICRP Publication 60 (ICRP, 1991).

(92) In general, the biological effectiveness is not simply related to LET, especially for heavy ions with high LET-values. This is because the width of a particle track depends on the velocity of the particles. Particles of different  $Z$  show different effectiveness at the same LET-value (Cucinotta et al., 2011). The position of the peak RBE versus LET depends on particle charge number and does not occur at a fixed LET (see Figs. 3.5 and 3.6). The peak position changes from less than 100 keV/μm to more than 150 keV/μm as  $Z$  increases from protons with  $Z=1$  to Fe with  $Z=26$ . RBE depends on charge  $Z$  and energy  $E$  of the particle,

1589 and not on LET alone. At a fixed value of LET less than the peak position, particles with  
 1590 lower  $Z$  are more biologically effective. In addition, the slope of rise of RBE with LET is  
 1591 variable with the endpoint/system studied, and the slope of decrease of RBE at high LET-  
 1592 values is predicted to be proportional to  $LET^{-1}$  rather than  $LET^{-1/2}$ .  
 1593



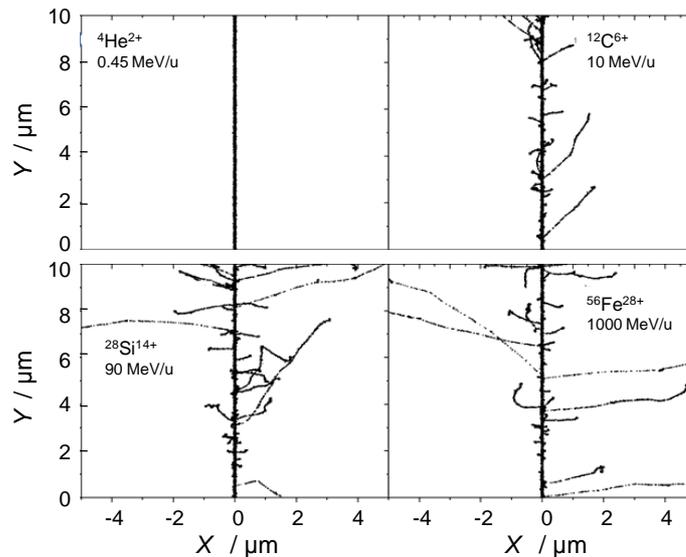
1594  
 1595  
 1596 Fig 3.5. Relative biological effectiveness (RBE) for inactivation of V79 hamster cells (closed  
 1597 symbols) and T1 mammalian cells (open symbols) exposed to beams of accelerated heavy ions ( $\blacktriangle$ ,  $\triangle$   
 1598 deuterons and He-ions;  $\bullet$ ,  $\circ$  heavier ions) versus LET (Thacker et al., 1979).  
 1599



1600  
 1601 Fig. 3.6.  $RBE_{max}$  versus LET for chromosomal aberrations (total exchange) of human lymphocytes  
 1602 exposed to Si and Fe nuclei, relative to low-dose and dose-rate  $\gamma$ -rays (George et al., 2007).  
 1603

1604 (93) For the same LET-value the distribution of  $\delta$ -rays strongly varies with the ion  
 1605 considered (see Fig 3.7). The approach of describing radiation quality in terms of LET  
 1606 assumes that the various ion tracks shown in Fig. 3.7 produce the same cancer risk, although

1607 the initial physical-chemical stages are quite distinct. Hence, there is considerable support to  
 1608 relate RBE to a function better correlated to the track structure of the charged particles  
 1609 passing tissue (Cucinotta et al., 2011), especially to the spatial distribution of  $\delta$ -rays along the  
 1610 tracks. Arguments from Katz (Katz, 1970; Katz et al., 1972) and observations by Goodhead  
 1611 et al. (Goodhead, 1980) supports the hypothesis that especially for heavy ions biological  
 1612 effects are strongly influenced by particle track structure including  $\delta$ -ray effects rather than  
 1613 by the stopping power (LET) only.



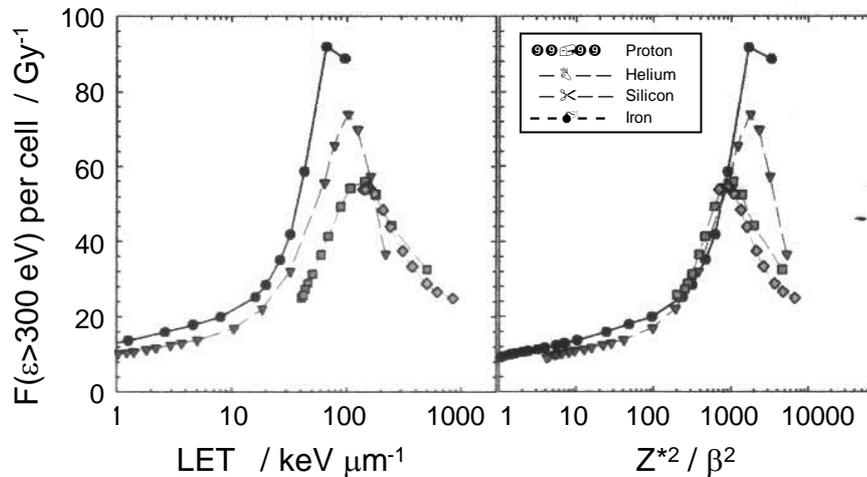
1614 Fig. 3.7. Simulated tracks segments for the following ions in water:  $^4\text{He}$  (0.45 MeV/u),  $^{12}\text{C}$  (10  
 1615 MeV/u),  $^{28}\text{Si}$  (90 MeV/u), and  $^{56}\text{Fe}$  (1 GeV/u). Shown are projections over the XY plane. Ions are  
 1616 generated at the origin along the Y axis in liquid water at 25°C under identical LET conditions ( $\sim 150$   
 1617  $\text{keV } \mu\text{m}^{-1}$ ). Each dot represents a radiolytic species (Plante et al., 2008).  
 1618  
 1619

1620 (94) A parameter  $Z^{*2}/\beta^2$ , where  $Z^*$  is the effective charge number of the nuclei and  $\beta$  the  
 1621 velocity of the nuclei relative to the light velocity, has been proposed by Katz and others  
 1622 (Katz, 1970; Katz et al., 1972) to be a better descriptor of energy deposition in small volumes  
 1623 than LET, especially for heavy ions. This is based on the idea that a reaction cross section  
 1624 with respect to biological reactions in tissue should include the effect of  $\delta$ -rays. A value of  $Z^*$   
 1625 can be obtained by using the following equation given by Barkas (Barkas, 1963):

1626 
$$Z^* = Z (1 - \exp(-125 \beta Z^{2/3})) \quad (3.7)$$

1627 where  $Z$  is the charge number of the nuclei considered. As an example Figure 3.8 shows  
 1628 calculations comparing the frequency of energy deposition above 300 eV in a volume of  
 1629 about the size of a nucleosome. Obviously the parameter  $Z^{*2}/\beta^2$  provides an improved  
 1630 descriptor of energy deposition in small volumes compared to LET.  
 1631

1632



1633

1634

Fig. 3.8. Number of nucleosomes per cell receiving 300 eV or more as a function of LET (left) or  $Z^{*2}/\beta^2$  (right). Calculated data are shown for H, He, Si, and Fe nuclei (Cucinotta, 2011).

1635

1636

1637

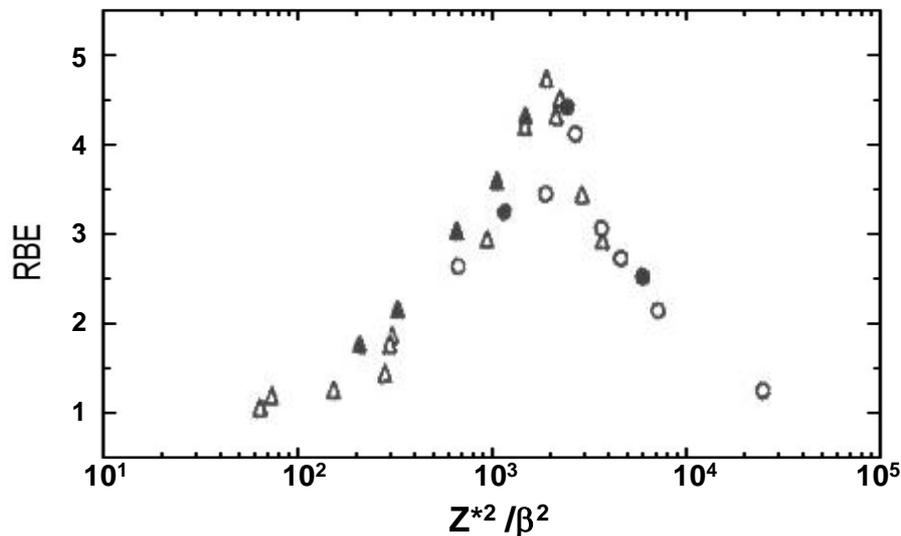
1638

1639

1640

1641

(95) As a consequence, a RBE function has been derived and described to be dependent on two parameters of the particle, either given by  $E$  and  $Z$ , or alternatively by  $Z^{*2}/\beta^2$  (Cucinotta et al., 2011). In Fig. 3.9 the same RBE data as shown in Fig. 3.5 are plotted against  $Z^{*2}/\beta^2$  and this plot may be a better basis for defining a quality factor function than using the LET parameter.



1642

1643

1644

1645

1646

Fig 3.9. Relative biological effectiveness (RBE) for inactivation of V79 hamster cells (closed symbols) and T1 mammalian cells (open symbols) exposed to beams of accelerated heavy ions ( $\blacktriangle$ ,  $\triangle$  deuterons and He-ions;  $\bullet$ ,  $\circ$  heavier ions) versus  $(Z^*/\beta)^2$  (Thacker et al., 1979).

### 3.2.2 Radiation weighting factor

1647

1648

1649

1650

1651

(96) Radiation weighting factors,  $w_R$ , have been used in the definition of the protection quantity equivalent dose in an organ or tissue in ICRP Publication 60 (ICRP 1991) and numerically modified in Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007). Values of  $w_R$  are given for various

1652 types of radiation either incident on the human body or emitted by radionuclides in the body.  
 1653 Data for  $w_R$  are given in Table 3.2. The same values of the radiation weighting factors are  
 1654 applied to all tissues and organs of the body independent of the degradation of the primary  
 1655 radiation and the production of secondary radiations of different radiation quality. It may be  
 1656 seen as a mean factor representing radiation quality averaged over the different tissues and  
 1657 organs of the body. The application of  $w_R$ -values is restricted to low doses and dose rates and  
 1658 should not be applied in cases of higher doses where tissue reactions may occur.

1659 (97) Except for neutrons, all types of particles are given a single weighting factor value.  
 1660 This simplification is seen to provide sufficient precision for general applications in  
 1661 radiological protection, even if it is well known that radiation quality depends also on the  
 1662 energy of the particle involved. This is especially the case for heavy ions of high energies  
 1663 which, however, in most radiation fields at the Earth are less important of radiological  
 1664 protection.

1665  
 1666 Table 3.2. Radiation weighting factors<sup>1</sup>,  $w_R$  (ICRP, 2007)

Radiation type	Radiation weighting factor, $w_R$
Photons	1
Electrons and muons	1
Protons and charged pions	2
Alpha particles, fission fragments, heavy ions	20
Neutrons	A continuous curve as a function of neutron energy (see equation 3.9 and Fig. 3.2)

1667 (1) All values relate to the radiation incident on the body or, for internal sources, emitted  
 1668 from the source.

1669  
 1670 (98) For neutrons the following function is recommended for the calculation of  
 1671 radiation weighting factors (ICRP, 2007):

$$w_R = \begin{cases} 2.5 + 18.2 e^{-[\ln(E_n)]^2/6} & , E_n < 1 \text{ MeV} \\ 5.0 + 17.0 e^{-[\ln(2E_n)]^2/6} & , 1 \text{ MeV} \leq E_n \leq 50 \text{ MeV} \\ 2.5 + 3.25 e^{-[\ln(0.04E_n)]^2/6} & , E_n > 50 \text{ MeV} \end{cases} \quad (3.8)$$

1672  
 1673 where the neutron energy,  $E_n$ , is given in MeV (see also Fig. 3.10).  
 1674

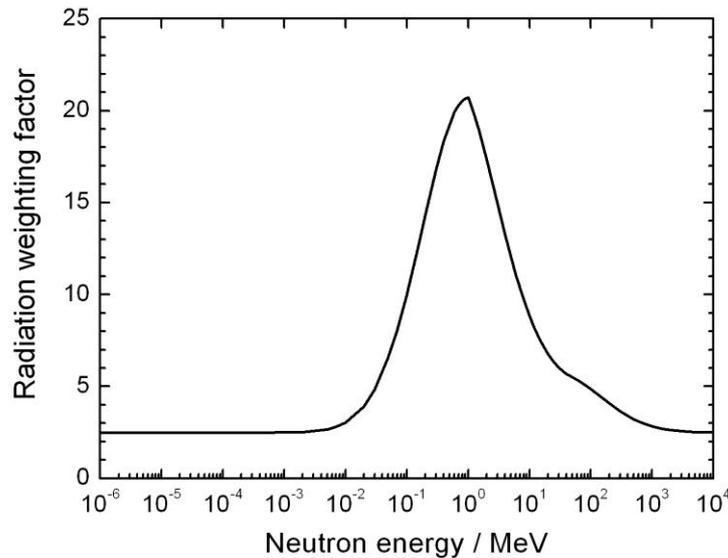


Fig. 3.10. Radiation weighting factor,  $w_R$ , for neutrons versus neutron energy (ICRP, 2007).

1675  
1676  
1677

(99) For applications in space, where high-energy heavy ions significantly contribute to the total dose in the human body, a more realistic approach for radiation weighting should be chosen (ICRP, 2007). This could, for example, be based on the calculation of mean quality factors in the human body (see Section 3.2.3). Some other difficulties with the  $w_R$ -concept for application in high energy radiation fields have also been discussed by Pelliccioni (1998).

1683  
1684  
1685

### 3.2.3 Quality factor

1686  
1687  
1688  
1689  
1690  
1691  
1692  
1693  
1694  
1695  
1696  
1697  
1698

(100) Radiation quality is seen to be strongly correlated with its energy deposition properties along the tracks of charged particles, especially with the ionisation density along their tracks. For applications in radiological protection, the different biological effectiveness of radiation is considered by introducing the quality factor function,  $Q(L)$ .  $Q(L)$  characterizes the biological effectiveness of a charged particle with a linear energy transfer  $L$  at a point of interest in tissue relative to the effectiveness of a reference radiation at this point.  $Q$  is defined by a function of  $L$  in water (not in tissue) as given in various publications of ICRP and ICRU (ICRP, 1963, 1977, 1991; ICRU, 1970, 1986). RBE-values provide the basis for the selection of a quality factor function used in the definition of the specific dose quantities in radiological protection (see Section 3.2). For this application, all photons and electrons (all low-LET radiation with  $L < 10$  keV/ $\mu$ m) are weighted by  $Q = 1$ . This is seen to be an approximation sufficient for usual radiation protection applications and greatly simplifies measurements and calculations.

1699  
1700

(101) The actual quality factor function  $Q(L)$  with  $L$  for charged particles in water was given in Publication 60 (ICRP, 1991):

1701  
1702  
1703  
1704  
1705

$$Q(L) = \begin{cases} 1 & L < 10 \text{ keV}/\mu\text{m} \\ 0.32 L - 2.2 & 10 \text{ keV}/\mu\text{m} \leq L \leq 100 \text{ keV}/\mu\text{m} \\ 300/\sqrt{L} & L > 100 \text{ keV}/\mu\text{m} \end{cases} \quad (3.9)$$

1706 (102) The  $Q(L)$  function is the outcome of radiobiological investigations on cellular and  
 1707 molecular systems as well as on the results of animal experiments (see e. g. (ICRP, 2003))  
 1708 and has not been changed since 1990. The function includes, however, also some judgments  
 1709 for simplifying radiological protection practice.  $Q(L) = 1$  for  $L < 10$  keV/ $\mu$ m, even it is well  
 1710 known that the RBE of photons increases with decreasing energy (ICRP, 2003).

1711 (103) The quality factor  $Q$  at a point in tissue is then given by:

1712 
$$Q = \frac{1}{D} \int_{L=0}^{L=\infty} Q(L) D_L dL \quad (3.10)$$

1713 where  $D$  is the absorbed dose in tissue and  $D_L = dD/dL$  the distribution of  $D$  in  $L$  (for  
 1714 charged particles in water) at the point of interest in tissue.

1715 (104) For exposure of the human body by neutrons the radiation field is modified in the  
 1716 body by moderation of the incident neutrons and secondary radiation from neutron reactions.  
 1717 Therefore, for a given neutron exposure situation, the value of the quality factor depends on  
 1718 the position in the body and the mean radiation quality factor in organs and tissues of the  
 1719 body may differ. For each organ or tissue T, a tissue-mean radiation quality factor,  $Q_T$ , can  
 1720 be calculated using:

1721

1722 
$$Q_T = \frac{1}{m_T D_T} \iint_{m_T L} Q(L) D_L dL dm \quad (3.11)$$

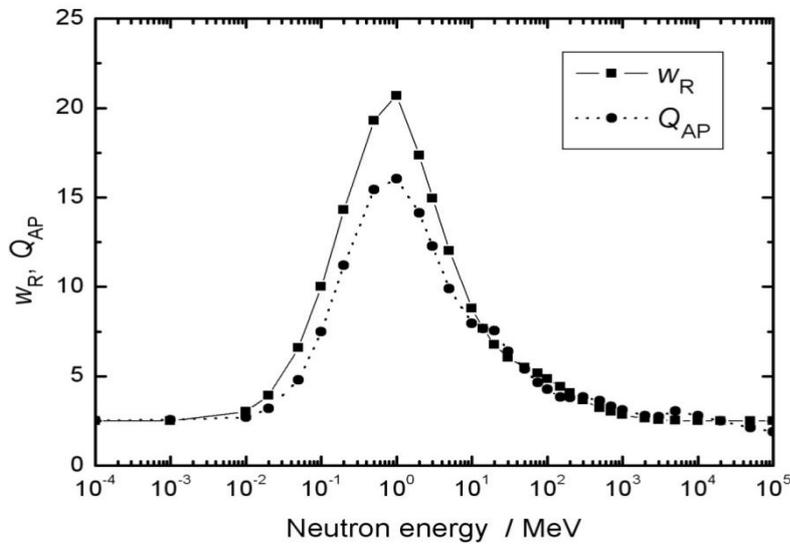
1723 where  $m_T$  is the mass of the organ or tissue T. A body-mean quality factor,  $Q_E$ , averaged over  
 1724 the human body by considering the mean organ absorbed doses,  $D_T$ , and the tissue weighting  
 1725 factors,  $w_T$ , is given by

1726 
$$Q_E = \sum_T w_T Q_T D_T / \sum_T w_T D_T . \quad (3.12)$$

1727 (105) Figure 3.11 shows both the radiation weighting factor and the body-mean quality  
 1728 factor,  $Q_{E,AP}$ , calculated for the adult male reference phantom, for monoenergetic neutrons  
 1729 (AP incidence) versus neutron energy. Values of  $Q_E$  are similar for other directions of  
 1730 neutron incidence (e.g. ISO). Obviously stronger differences between  $w_R$  and  $Q_E$  are only for  
 1731 neutron energies between 0.1 MeV and 10 MeV. For neutron energies above 10 MeV, the  
 1732 difference is negligible. Differences between  $Q_T$  for a single organ and  $w_R$  may be, however,  
 1733 much larger.

1734

1735



1736

1737

Fig. 3.11. Radiation weighting factor,  $w_R$ , and body-averaged mean quality factor,  $Q_{E,AP}$ , calculated for neutrons (AP incidence) versus neutron energy (Sato et al., 2009).

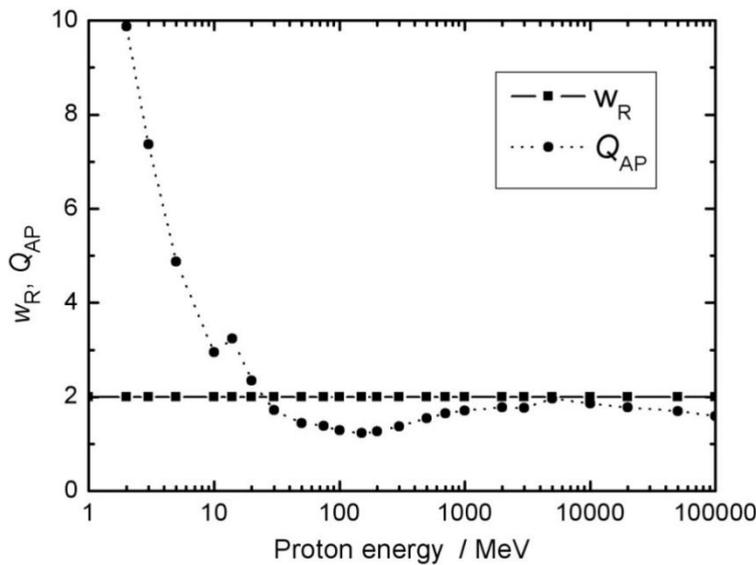
1738

1739

1740

1741

(106) Similar calculations have been performed for incident protons by Sato et al. (Sato, 2009) and these data are shown in Fig. 3.12.



1742

1743

Fig. 3.12. Radiation weighting factor,  $w_R$ , and body-averaged mean quality factor,  $Q_{E,AP}$ , calculated for protons (AP incidence) versus proton energy (Sato et al., 2009).

1744

1745

1746

1747

1748

1749

1750

1751

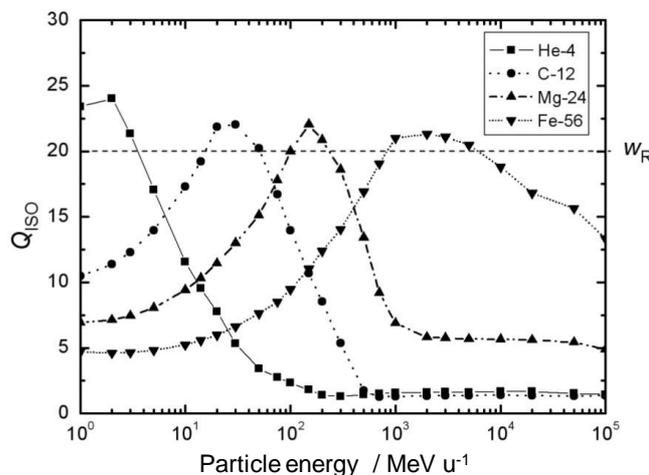
1752

(107) While for energies of incident protons below about 10 MeV there are large differences between the radiation weighting factor and the mean quality factor, they are much lower at higher proton energies and are less than 20% at proton energies above 1 GeV. Protons below about 10 MeV, however, are low-penetrating radiation which are mostly stopped already in the skin of exposed persons and hence contribute little to the effective dose in cosmic radiation fields with many protons of high energies. When exposure of the skin needs special attention, protons below about 10 MeV, however, need also to be

1753 considered. In such cases, the absorbed dose to the skin, and not the effective dose is of prime  
 1754 interest.

1755 (108) At proton energies above 20 MeV, the mean quality factor is always between 1 and  
 1756 2. At these energies, protons can be seen to be low-LET particles. The increase of  $Q$  at  
 1757 energies above 150 MeV is due to proton reactions in tissue where secondary charged  
 1758 particles are produced.

1759 (109) While for high-energy neutrons and protons the difference between  $w_R$  and the mean  
 1760 quality factor is relatively small, the situation is quite different for heavy ions.



1761 Fig. 3.13. Radiation weighting factor,  $w_R$ , and body-averaged quality factors,  $Q_{E,ISO}$ , for  $^4\text{He}$ ,  $^{12}\text{C}$ ,  
 1762  $^{24}\text{Mg}$  and  $^{56}\text{Fe}$  (ISO incidence) versus particle energy (Sato et al., 2010).  
 1763

1764  
 1765 (110) The body-mean quality factor is strongly varying with the type and energy of the ion  
 1766 (Sato et al., 2010), while the  $w_R$ -value has been fixed to 20 for all heavy ions and all energies.  
 1767 For example, Fig. 3.13 shows body-mean values of  $Q_E$  for  $^4\text{He}$ ,  $^{12}\text{C}$ ,  $^{24}\text{Mg}$  and  $^{56}\text{Fe}$  ions with  
 1768 isotropic radiation incidence to the body. The value varies between about 2 and 24 depending  
 1769 on the ion type and the energy. There are also stronger variations in  $Q_T$  depending on the  
 1770 position of the organ or tissue in the human body. This situation underlines the decision, not  
 1771 to select a single radiation weighting factor value for all heavy ions and all particle energies.  
 1772 The recommended concept of quantities for use in radiological protection of astronauts in  
 1773 space takes account of this fact (see Section 3.3.1).

1774 (111) Similar to the dependence of RBE for high-energy ions, a different way of defining  
 1775 a quality factor function may be derived from the track structure of the charged particles  
 1776 rather than being only related to LET. Cucinotta et al. (Cucinotta, 2011a) have proposed a  
 1777 functional dependence of a quality factor on two parameters of the particle,  $Z$  and  $E$  or  
 1778 alternatively can be expressed in terms of  $Z^2/\beta^2$  and LET. Because the RBE values for an  
 1779 induction of leukaemia and of solid cancers are quite different, they proposed two different  
 1780 functions  $Q(Z,E)$  for leukaemia and solid cancers (see Fig. 3.14).

1781 (112) The general ideas discussed on track-structure models have been used to define a  
 1782 cross section function related to risk which may be written as

1783 
$$\Sigma(Z, E) = \Sigma_0 P(Z, E) + (\alpha_\gamma L / 6.24) (1 - P(Z, E)) \quad (3.13)$$

1784 with

1785 
$$P(Z, E) = (1 - \exp(-Z^2 / \kappa \beta^2))^m \quad (3.14)$$

1786 where  $\Sigma_0$ ,  $m$ , and  $\kappa$  are parameters which should be based on fits to data from radiobiology  
 1787 experiments, and the low-LET slope,  $\alpha_\gamma$ , estimated from epidemiological data for  $\gamma$ -  
 1788 radiations. The parameter  $\beta$  is the particle velocity relative to the velocity of light.  $Z^*$  is the  
 1789 effective charge number which includes a velocity dependent correction to  $Z$  at low particle  
 1790 energies (Barkas, 1963) as defined in eq. (3.7).

1791 Using the equations above, a quality factor function,  $Q(Z,E)$  can then be defined by

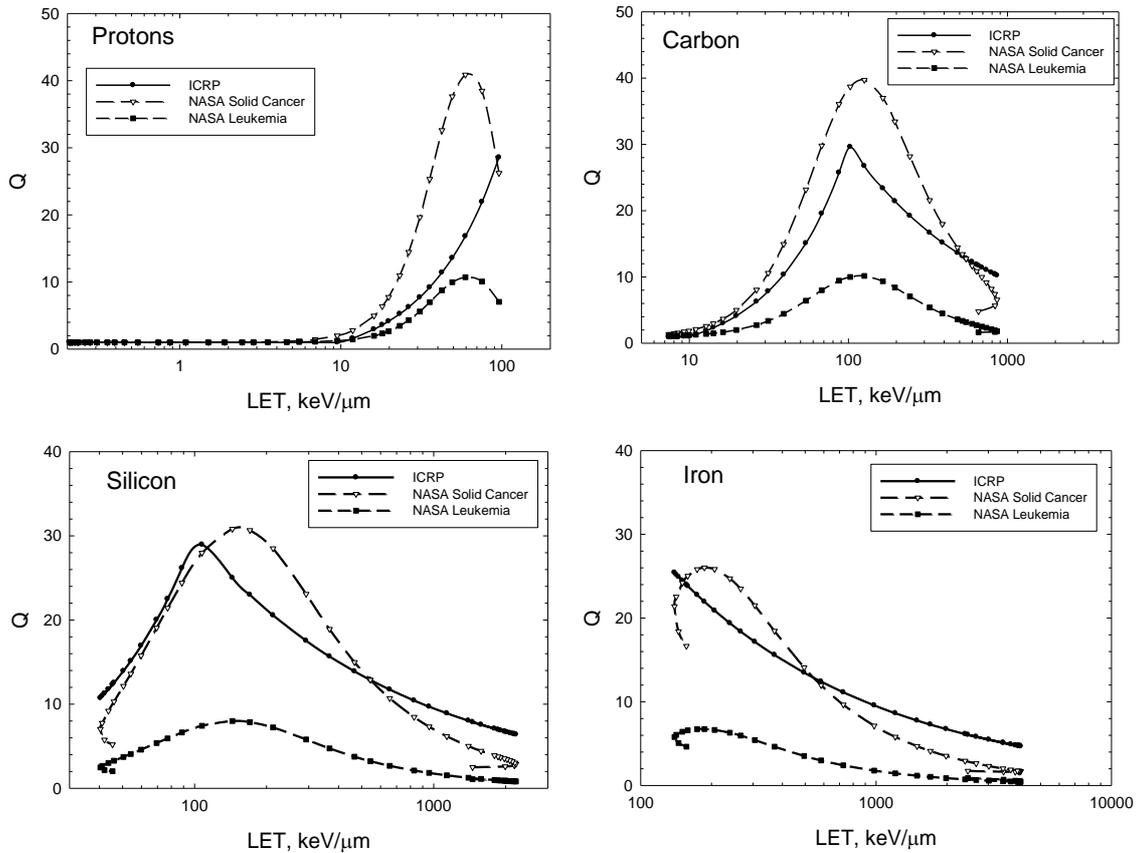
1792 
$$Q(Z,E) = (1 - P(Z, E) + (6.25 (\Sigma_0/(\alpha_\gamma L)) P(Z, E) \tag{3.15}$$

1793 (113) Note that  $L$  is not an independent variable in addition to  $Z$  and  $E$ , but for a given  $Z$   
 1794 and  $E$ , the  $L$ -value is fixed. Alternatively, one may write  $Q(Z,L)$  or also  $Q(E,Z^{*2}/\beta^2)$ . At high  
 1795 particle energies, this function defines a  $1/L$ -dependence of  $Q$  different from the  $1/L^{1/2}$ -  
 1796 dependence given by the  $Q(L)$  function of eq. (3.10). The interpretation of the parameters is  
 1797 quite general, and is not tied to a particular track structure models per se, but rather is an  
 1798 efficient parameterization of radiobiology data for particles. The parameters can be described  
 1799 as follows:  $\Sigma_0$  is the maximum value of the cross section, which is related to  $RBE_{max}$  for the  
 1800 most biologically effective particle types,  $m$  is the slope of the cross section for increasing  
 1801 ionisation density, with values  $m>1$  necessary to have  $RBE>1$ , and  $\kappa$  determines the  
 1802 saturation value of the cross section with increasing  $Z^{*2}/\beta^2$ , where the RBE begins to  
 1803 decline.

1804 (114) High-energy protons of about 150 MeV have an LET similar to  $\gamma$ -radiation and their  
 1805 kinetic energy is below a value where nuclear reactions become important. Many  
 1806 experiments have shown a biological effectiveness for those protons to be very similar to  $\gamma$ -  
 1807 radiation. For proton of this energy, it is  $P(Z,E) \ll 1$ , and  $Q \sim 1$ .

1808 (115) For solid cancer risks, radiobiology data are sparse. However, the largest RBE for  
 1809 HZE nuclei is in the range from 20 to 50 for solid tumors in rodents, and for chromosomal  
 1810 aberrations and mutations in human cells. A lower value is found for leukaemia. This  
 1811 assumes a linear dose response at low doses for charged particles, ignoring non-targeted-  
 1812 effects or other possible mechanisms which may lead to deviations from linearity. Thus, for  
 1813 example, if a peak RBE value of approximately 40 is assumed for Si at 100 keV/ $\mu$ m where  
 1814  $P(Z,E) \sim 1$ ,  $\Sigma_0 / \alpha_\gamma$  can be estimated as  $40 \times 100 / 6.24$ . A comparison of the quality factor based  
 1815 on LET and on both,  $L$  and  $Z$  is shown below (Fig. 3.14). The influence in the uncertainties in  
 1816 the values of these parameters, which describe the uncertainties in information on  $RBE_{max}$   
 1817 and the peak position of the  $RBE_{max}$  with LET for different particles can be investigated  
 1818 using Monte-Carlo methods (Cucinotta et al., 2011).

1819



1820  
 1821 □ Fig. 3.14. LET dependence of the quality factor,  $Q$ , for H, C, Si, and Fe nuclei as defined by the  
 1822 Commission (ICRP, 1991) and as proposed by NASA (Cucinotta, 2011) differently defined for  
 1823 considering relative risks of either solid cancer or leukaemia .  
 1824

1825

### 1826 3.3 Approach for space applications

1827

1828 (116) The situation in a space vehicle is characterized by the primary radiation field  
 1829 consisting of various high-energy charged particles from protons up to heavy ions such as Fe-  
 1830 56 or even higher Z values, and by radiation components of photons, electrons, neutrons and  
 1831 other reaction products from the interaction of primary particles with the materials of the  
 1832 spacecraft (see Chapter 2). This results in many different types of radiation together with  
 1833 broad energy distributions up to particle energies of many GeV/u.

1834 (117) Individual doses are generally higher than in usual exposure situations on Earth. As  
 1835 a consequence, deterministic effects in specific organs, e.g. lens of the eye or skin, cannot be  
 1836 ignored. This needs specific consideration and will be further discussed in Sect. 3.3.3.

1837 (118) The consequence of this specific situation is that some concepts of the quantities  
 1838 used in radiological protection on Earth have to be reconsidered for use in space. For  
 1839 example, the operational quantity for area monitoring of penetrating radiation which is based  
 1840 on the dose equivalent at 10 mm depth of the ICRU sphere has been mainly designed on the  
 1841 basis of photon and neutron data for control of effective dose and is limited in its application  
 1842 to radiation with energies where secondary charged particle equilibrium is achieved at about  
 1843 10 mm depth in tissue. This is not the case for very high energy particles. For this situation  
 1844 computer modelling and simulation of exposure situations become very important in addition

1845 to of measurements.

1846

1847 **3.3.1 Protection quantities**

1848

1849 (119) Radiation risk estimates are generally based on absorbed doses in the tissues and  
 1850 organs of the human body and the concept of the mean absorbed dose,  $D_T$ , in various organs  
 1851 and tissues of the body (see Section 3.1.1) has been assumed to be applicable also for  
 1852 astronauts in space. Limitation to this concept, however, may arise by the fact that fluence  
 1853 rates of heavy ions are very low. If only few particles pass an organ with a high energy  
 1854 transfer along each single particle track, averaging of the dose over an organ is a  
 1855 simplification which increases the uncertainty when risk estimates are considered. Another  
 1856 problem arises due to the large fraction of charged particles in the radiation field. Depending  
 1857 on their energy, they may be stopped in the human body and hence the depth dose  
 1858 distribution may not sufficiently homogenous over larger tissues or organs in the body to  
 1859 consider only an averaged value. Nevertheless, the mean absorbed dose in organs or tissues  
 1860 of the body is a very useful concept for radiological protection practice and for omni-  
 1861 directional (isotropic) exposure of an astronaut which can often be assumed in space, this  
 1862 problem is less important.

1863 (120)  $D_T$  is a quantity which cannot be measured but is usually determined by applying  
 1864 calculated conversion coefficients which relate the mean dose in an organ or tissue to an  
 1865 external radiation field quantity (fluence for particles or air kerma for photons). They are,  
 1866 however, not calculated for any individual, but for adult male and female reference persons  
 1867 (ICRP, 2009) and are, therefore, restricted in the assessment of individual doses. The charged  
 1868 particles in the energy range of some GeV/u which are present in space, have very long  
 1869 ranges in tissue which results in a relatively homogeneous exposure of the human body and  
 1870 the variation of the mean organ doses is not very large, especially in case of isotropic  
 1871 exposure (see Section 6.3).

1872 (121) Obviously, the general use of  $w_R = 20$  for all heavy ions does not reflect the  
 1873 variation of RBE with type and energy of heavy ions and the  $Q$ -approach is better correlated  
 1874 with the assumption of a general dependence of RBE on LET and possibly on  $(Z^2/\beta^2)$  (see  
 1875 Section 3.1.3). It is, therefore, endorsed to follow the approach already applied by space  
 1876 agencies and to use the term *dose equivalent in an organ or tissue T*,  $H_{T,Q}$ , defined by

1877 
$$H_{T,Q} = Q_T D_T \tag{3.16}$$

1878 with the mean quality factor  $Q_T$  in an organ or tissue T for the given radiation field. When  
 1879 using the  $Q(L)$  function,  $Q_T$  is calculated by

1880 
$$Q_T = \frac{1}{m_T D_T} \int_{m_T}^{L=\infty} \int Q(L) D_L dL dm \tag{3.17}$$

1881 with the mass,  $m_T$ , of the organ or tissue considered.

1882 (122) If a quality factor is defined by a function  $Q(Z,E)$ , a  $Q_T$ -value can be calculated by

1883 
$$Q_T = \frac{1}{m_T D_T} \int (\sum_Z \int_E Q(Z, E) D_E(Z, E) dE dm) \tag{3.18a}$$

1884 or alternatively

1885 
$$Q_T = \frac{1}{m_T D_T} \int (\sum_Z \int_L Q(Z, L) D_L(Z, L) dL dm) \quad . \quad (3.18b)$$

1886 (123) Similar to equivalent dose in an organ or tissue,  $H_T$ , the value of dose equivalent in  
 1887 an organ or tissue is defined for organs and tissues in males and females by:

1888 
$$H_{T,Q}^M = Q_T^M D_T^M \quad \text{and} \quad H_{T,Q}^F = Q_T^F D_T^F \quad . \quad (3.19)$$

1889 (124) In most cases the difference of  $Q_T$  for males and females is small and a tissue-mean  
 1890 quality factor,  $Q_T$ , may be used for both sexes.

1891 (125) Based on the definition of effective dose,  $E$ , the effective dose equivalent,  $H_E$ , can  
 1892 then be calculated by applying the tissue weighting factors,  $w_T$ , as given in ICRP Publication  
 1893 103 (ICRP, 2007)

1894 
$$H_E = \sum_T w_T H_{T,Q} \quad (3.20)$$

1895 where for  $H_{T,Q}$  the mean value from doses for the male and female phantom is chosen. Note  
 1896 that this quantity has already been defined by the Commission in Publication 26 (ICRP,  
 1897 1977) but with different tissue weighting factors and replaced by effective dose in Publication  
 1898 60 (ICRP, 1991).

1899 (126) An application of effective dose equivalent, however, is not recommended for the  
 1900 assessment of doses of individual or small groups of astronauts when these should become a  
 1901 basis for risk estimates. The recommended  $w_T$  values are single values for both sexes and also  
 1902 based on data for persons of all ages including children. They are not appropriate for a  
 1903 realistic risk assessment for male and female astronauts and hence risk estimates should be  
 1904 based on either absorbed dose or dose equivalent data for the organs and tissues of males or  
 1905 females respectively, and corresponding risk factors for these tissues for male and female  
 1906 adults (see e.g. Table A.4.19 in Annex B of ICRP Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007)). If  
 1907 necessary, also the age of the person considered may be taking into account. Even the quality  
 1908 factor may differ depending if leukaemia or solid cancer induction or mortality is considered  
 1909 (see Fig. 3.14).

1910 (127) If, nevertheless, a value of effective dose equivalent is needed for recording,  $H_E$   
 1911 should be calculated by:

1912  
 1913 
$$H_E^M = \sum_T w_T H_{T,Q}^M \quad \text{or} \quad H_E^F = \sum_T w_T H_{T,Q}^F \quad (3.21)$$

1914 depending on the sex of the astronaut.

1915  
 1916 **3.3.2 Operational quantities**  
 1917

1918 (128) Radiation monitoring in a spacecraft and individual monitoring for each astronaut is  
 1919 a necessary measure for radiological protection in space and the assessment of mission doses  
 1920 of astronauts.

1921 (129) On Earth, area monitoring in terms of the quantity ambient dose equivalent,  $H^*(10)$ ,  
 1922 provides in fields of penetrating radiation the information which exposure in terms of  
 1923 effective dose a person would receive when staying for a given time at the position of the  
 1924 area monitor. In most external fields of strongly-penetrating radiation on Earth, only low-  
 1925 LET radiation, mostly x- and  $\gamma$ -radiation, partially also electrons, is present and in few cases  
 1926 only neutrons are also important for radiological protection. As a consequence, most area  
 1927 monitors used in radiological protection measure either photon or neutron doses and the total

1928 ambient dose equivalent is then achieved by adding both dose components. Concentrating on  
1929 photons, electrons and neutrons only has strongly influenced the idea of defining a special  
1930 measurable dose quantity in an appropriate simple phantom (the ICRU sphere) for area  
1931 monitoring and the assessment of effective dose.

1932 (130) The consequence of the specific situation in space is that some concepts of the  
1933 quantities used in radiological protection on Earth have to be revisited. For example, the  
1934 operational quantity for area monitoring of penetrating radiation which is based on the dose  
1935 equivalent at 10 mm depth of the ICRU sphere in aligned fields has been mainly designed on  
1936 the basis of photon and neutron data for control of effective dose and is limited in its  
1937 application to radiation with energies where secondary charged particle equilibrium can be  
1938 achieved at about 10 mm depth in tissue. This is not the case for very high energy particles.

1939 (131) In radiation fields in space with its large spectrum of different types of particles of  
1940 very high energies the definition of  $H^*(10)$  is inappropriate (ICRP, 2012) and it will be  
1941 difficult to define a dose quantity independent from the human body with the same properties  
1942 as ambient dose equivalent for photon and neutron radiation of conventional energy. In  
1943 addition, monitoring and assessment of doses in the human body during missions of  
1944 astronauts may not be restricted to effective dose equivalent and dose equivalent to the skin,  
1945 the lens of the eye and the extremities, but should include other organs and tissues of the  
1946 body, too. Hence no specific dose quantity for area monitoring in space has been defined up  
1947 to now. The monitors used serve mainly as instruments for recording the environmental  
1948 radiation outside or inside a spacecraft and for warning in cases of very intensive SPE's.  
1949 They measure particle fluence, LET-distributions or absorbed doses in detector materials (see  
1950 Chapter 4). These data are used as input or validation data for calculations of doses in the  
1951 human body.

1952 (132) In individual monitoring, the situation is similar to area monitoring and a dosimeter  
1953 calibrated in terms of  $H_p(10)$  in photon or neutron radiation fields on Earth and worn on the  
1954 body of an astronaut in space will not automatically provide an estimate of effective dose  
1955 equivalent in complex space radiation fields.

1956 (133) A specific operational dose quantity for individual monitoring in space has not been  
1957 defined by ICRU or ICRP. Different quantities and procedures may be applied for an  
1958 assessment of organ doses or effective dose equivalent (see Chapter 4). A combination of  
1959 measurements of absorbed dose and LET-distributions at the surface of the body may become  
1960 an appropriate way for individual dose assessment (see Sect. 4.3.3). Data from area  
1961 monitoring within the spacecraft combined with calculated dose conversion coefficients can  
1962 also be used to calculate organ dose equivalents or effective dose equivalents for persons  
1963 present in that radiation field (see Chapter 6). This, however, needs the knowledge of the  
1964 fluence and energy distribution of all components of the radiation field which in addition may  
1965 vary with time. Furthermore application of methods of biological dosimetry may provide a  
1966 comparative way of assessing mission doses of astronauts (see Sect. 4.3.4 and 6.4.2).

1967 (134) Specific attention is needed for the measurement of doses from low-penetrating  
1968 radiation, e.g. electrons or solar low-energy protons, which may contribute significantly to  
1969 doses to the skin and the lens of the eye especially in situations when astronauts are working  
1970 outside the spacecraft or during large solar flare events.

1971

### 1972 3.3.3 Quantities for high doses

1973

1974 (135) At high doses near to thresholds where deterministic effects (tissue reactions) may  
1975 occur, organ dose equivalent and effective dose equivalent should generally not be used for

1976 an assessment of radiation risks. While  $H_{T,Q}$  and  $H_E$  may give an indication, if such dose  
1977 range is reached, risk estimates should be based on mean absorbed doses in organs or tissues,  
1978 maximum dose values in organs or tissues or on organ dose equivalent depending on the  
1979 actual situation and the availability of risk factors for the different types of radiation and  
1980 doses involved. Generally tissue reactions occur above a threshold dose in the range of 0.5 - 2  
1981 Gy.

1982 (136) The mean absorbed dose in an organ or tissue,  $D_T$ , and the RBE weighted mean  
1983 absorbed dose,  $RBE \cdot D_T$ , when high-LET radiation is involved, is the appropriate quantity for  
1984 assessing risks of deterministic effects at higher doses. The RBE-value to be chosen may  
1985 depend on the organ or tissue considered and the specific dose and dose rate as well on the  
1986 type and severity of the tissue reaction considered. In some cases of deterministic effects,  
1987 however, not only the mean dose in an organ or tissue but also a local dose in that tissue may  
1988 become important (e.g. local skin dose).

1989 (137) The dose limits for tissue reaction are given in terms of the mean absorbed dose in  
1990 an organ or tissue,  $D_T$ , and this value weighted by an appropriate RBE should be applied. The  
1991 RBE values may be taken from ICRP Publication 58 (1989), where values of 6 (range 4 to 8)  
1992 for neutrons of energy 1 MeV to 5 MeV, of 3.5 (2 to 5) for neutrons of energy 5 MeV to 50  
1993 MeV, of 2.5 (1 to 4) for heavy ions, and of 1.5 for protons are recommended.

1994 (138) Measurements of particle fluence, LET-distributions or absorbed doses can be  
1995 performed in any radiation field, even in strong radiation fields producing high doses, e. g.  
1996 during solar particle events, where non-stochastic tissue reactions cannot be completely  
1997 excluded. Measurements of  $H_p(d)$  which is defined by using the fixed  $Q(L)$  relationship may  
1998 also be performed in such intense radiation fields for the purpose of dose recording. For risk  
1999 assessment, however, it must be considered that the  $Q(L)$  function has been defined based on  
2000  $RBE_{max}$  data at low doses and, therefore, its application in radiation is usually limited to the  
2001 low-dose range.  
2002

2003

2004

#### 4. METHODS OF MEASUREMENT OF RADIATION FLUENCES AND DOSES

2005

2006

2007

2008

2009

2010

2011

2012

(139) Radiation transport calculations, measurements, and interpretation of data are essential components for operational radiation safety. The measurements include an assessment of the environment at the exterior surface of the spacecraft or habitat; assessment of the interior environments in the spacecraft/habitat and EVA suit; the use of personal dosimeters; and the determination of the transmission of radiation to internal organs or tissues.

2013

2014

2015

2016

2017

2018

2019

2020

2021

2022

2023

2024

2025

(140) Individual monitoring of occupationally exposed persons on Earth is mainly performed to ensure that the exposure is below legal dose limits which are generally set to limit exposure risks to an acceptable level. While the basic limits are given in terms of effective dose, it is generally accepted that at doses far below the limits the measured personal dose equivalent appropriately assesses effective dose in routine radiological protection applications (ICRP, 2007). The situation in space, however, is significantly different. Doses to astronauts in space may be much higher than annual dose limits for occupationally exposed persons on Earth, especially in long duration missions. It is, therefore, important to obtain more precise information about doses and exposure risks. For planning purposes and for operational radiation safety programs, risk assessment is seen to be as important as dose recording for astronauts in space. For any risk assessment, however, the knowledge of the radiation incident on the human body and/or the assessment of doses in the human body are basic preconditions.

2026

2027

2028

2029

2030

(141) Calculations are essential to mission planning in that they provide pre-flight estimates of the doses that would be received by the astronauts during the different phases of a proposed mission. They are also an important part of the dose assessment process for determining the doses received by the astronauts during the mission.

2031

##### 4.1 Measurement quantities

2032

2033

2034

2035

2036

2037

2038

2039

2040

2041

2042

2043

2044

2045

(142) The objective of the adopted dose assessment approach in radiological protection is generally to determine the specific protection quantities defined for the low-dose range for limiting the probability of stochastic effects and for avoiding deterministic effects (tissue reactions) in the human body. For applications on Earth these quantities are the equivalent dose in an organ or tissue,  $H_T$ , and the effective dose,  $E$  (see Section 3.1). For the special situation of astronauts in space, the quantities mean absorbed dose in an organ or tissue,  $D_T$ , and dose equivalent in an organ or tissue,  $H_{T,Q}$ , are proposed for use instead (see Section 3.3). At higher doses when deterministic effects may occur, a differently weighted absorbed dose is required. In this case, a mean value of the relative biological effectiveness, RBE, needs to be determined from the information on the radiation field components and the specific RBE values of the different types of particles involved. There is an important role for biodosimetry. Individual biomarker measurements on astronauts can give consolidation for other dosimetric approaches.

2046

2047

2048

2049

2050

(143) The radiation environment external to a spacecraft in low Earth orbit consists of electrons, positrons, neutrons, protons and all stable atomic nuclei (up to charge  $Z = 92$ ). Particle energies range from a few eV for trapped electrons and from thermal neutrons to  $10^{14}$  MeV for GCR (see Chapter 2). Most of the electrons will not penetrate the wall of the spacecraft, but could penetrate the space suits worn during extravehicular activity (EVA),

2051 resulting in doses to the skin and lens of the eye. Nuclear interactions of neutrons, protons  
2052 and heavier nuclei with spacecraft, space suits, the Earth's atmosphere and the human body  
2053 produce secondary radiation, which add to the radiation field. The techniques of radiation  
2054 monitoring vary according to particle type, energy, and the measurement location (inside or  
2055 outside the spacecraft, inside EVA suits). The radiation environment can be classified on this  
2056 basis:

- 2057 • Trapped electrons – outside spacecraft and inside EVA suit;
- 2058 • Trapped protons (< 10 MeV) – do not penetrate spacecraft or EVA suit;
- 2059 • Protons and light charged particles (> 10 MeV) – outside and inside spacecraft, and  
2060 inside EVA suit;
- 2061 • GCR and secondary photons – outside and inside spacecraft, and inside EVA suit;
- 2062 • Secondary charged-particles – inside spacecraft and inside EVA suit;
- 2063 • Neutrons - outside and inside spacecraft, and inside EVA suit.

2064

2065 (144) In addition to variations of the primary external radiation field the relative  
2066 contribution of each component (including the secondary radiation) to organ and tissue  
2067 absorbed doses and dose equivalents at each location will also vary according to additional  
2068 factors, including the mass distribution inside the spacecraft and the EVA suit construction.

2069 (145) Mean absorbed doses and dose equivalent in organs and tissues of a human body are  
2070 generally not directly measurable. An approach to the estimation of these quantities is given  
2071 in Chapter 6. These include (1) calculations of particle type and energy and direction  
2072 distributions of fluence in radiation fields at the location of an astronaut plus the application  
2073 of organ absorbed dose and dose equivalent conversion coefficients; (2) direct assessment of  
2074 organ absorbed doses and dose equivalents for an astronaut by radiation transport calculation  
2075 using energy and direction distributions of fluence from outside of the spacecraft, or  
2076 otherwise, at the astronaut's location; and (3) measurement of absorbed dose or dose  
2077 equivalent near or on the astronaut and the use of results from calculations applying  
2078 anthropomorphic phantoms.

2079 (146) The main objectives of environmental measurements are the provision of radiation  
2080 field data of particle types, fluences and microdosimetric quantities, absorbed doses and dose  
2081 equivalents, using detectors in assemblies of various sizes, both integral and differential (with  
2082 respect to time, or LET, or energy, or direction, as appropriate) and, in some cases,  
2083 normalized to calculations of the radiation field components. For personal monitoring, the  
2084 same quantities might be determined, but more importantly data are required for the  
2085 determination of absorbed dose and dose equivalent. Absorbed dose and dose equivalent  
2086 values measured by personal dosimeters worn on the body can be applied as estimates of  $D$   
2087 and  $H$  at a point in adjacent tissue, or can be used with prior data as estimates of absorbed  
2088 dose or dose equivalent to specific organs and tissues at larger depth. Environmental  
2089 monitoring can provide radiation field data as input for calculations which will yield  
2090 estimates of doses in the human body or may even be used to directly assess individual risks.  
2091 It may measure dose quantities such as absorbed dose,  $D$ , the distribution of  $D$  in  $L$ ,  $D(L)$ , or  
2092 dose equivalent,  $H$ . It can also provide measurements in support of in-flight dose  
2093 management, dose recording, and ALARA actions.

2094 (147) The radiation detectors determine a particular measurement quantity. These include  
2095 (1) particle type and energy and direction distributions of fluence; (2) dose deposition in the  
2096 detector material; and (3) other dosimetric quantities such as LET or lineal energy,  $y$ . In  
2097 addition there are calibration data on detector response and normalization of detector  
2098 response (for example normalized to equivalent water absorbed dose for a radiation type and

2099 energy)

2100 (148) Several types of instrumentation are available including both active and passive  
2101 devices. Active instrumentation should have a time resolution sufficient to identify temporal  
2102 variations in the radiation field. Alarm or warning capabilities of instruments can be used to  
2103 support in-flight implementation of dose management and ALARA actions. Passive detectors  
2104 provide an integration of the exposure information over long time intervals. They are usually  
2105 very robust, small in their dimensions and need no power supply. Some devices also allow  
2106 on-demand readout. For all instrumentation used for measurements in space the following  
2107 must be established: (1) full response characterization and calibration; (2) measurement  
2108 model; and (3) knowledge of uncertainties. Comparison of instrument responses is also  
2109 useful. Many details of instrumentation for dosimetry in space have been published in review  
2110 papers by Benton (2001), Badhwar (2002), and Caffrey and Hamby (2011). Further  
2111 information has been presented by the HAMLET collaboration (HAMLET, 2011).

2112

## 2113 **4.2 Purpose of measurements**

2114

2115 (149) Measurements are performed for the purpose of determining individual exposures,  
2116 monitoring changes of the radiation environment and performing ALARA. Instrumentation  
2117 positioned inside or outside of a spacecraft or habitat can provide essential data for the  
2118 characterization of the primary fields impinging on the spacecraft, such as galactic radiation,  
2119 the trapped particle radiation field and the field caused by solar particle events. Such data  
2120 from outside allow corrections to be made to the input data of transport codes to determine  
2121 the field inside the spacecraft or habitat and so can reduce dose assessment uncertainties. Ion  
2122 chambers or other active detectors with well-defined wall thickness can serve to monitor the  
2123 short-term variations in the electron environment for EVA.

2124 (150) Selectively located active and passive instrumentation allows radiation monitoring  
2125 and further adjustments to the calculated internal environment. Particle spectrometers can  
2126 provide data for the evaluation of transmission factors and of response functions of  
2127 dosimetric devices and allow evaluation of calculated values and uncertainties of dosimetric  
2128 quantities. Both active and passive devices are useful for determining absorbed dose,  
2129 absorbed dose distribution over LET, absorbed dose distribution over lineal energy, and  
2130 estimates of dose equivalent. Personal dosimeters worn by astronauts can determine some of  
2131 these quantities at adjacent tissues.

2132 (151) There are short-term and long-term variations depending on solar activity, which  
2133 modify the environmental radiation field (components, particle fluences, energies and  
2134 direction distributions), so that energy- and direction-sensitive instrumentation is mandatory.  
2135 In addition, active instrumentation allows the time-resolution of trapped, solar, and GCR  
2136 components.

2137

## 2138 **4.3 Instrumentation for radiation spectrometry, area and personal monitoring**

2139

### 2140 **4.3.1 General**

2141

2142 (152) No single device can determine the required dose quantities for all components of  
2143 the radiation field. Since there are large variations in the relative contributions to total  
2144 absorbed dose and dose equivalent from the different particle types, it is not generally  
2145 possible to determine the absorbed dose or dose equivalent from just one component (or few  
2146 components) and apply a correction factor to determine the absorbed dose or dose equivalent

2147 for the entire radiation field.

2148 (153) The dosimetry may be simplified by considering separately the radiation in terms of  
2149 its energy deposition properties characterized by LET (or lineal energy). These include both  
2150 low-LET charged particles (those of LET less than 10 keV/ $\mu\text{m}$ ) and high-LET charged  
2151 particles (those of LET equal to or greater than 10 keV/ $\mu\text{m}$ ). High-LET particles may be  
2152 separated into the high-energy heavy ions ( $Z > 2$ ) and their fragments, and the mainly high-  
2153 LET particles produced by the strong-force interactions of neutrons and high-energy protons.  
2154 Often separate dose measurements are performed for these categories, preferably minimizing  
2155 any overlap of response to avoid “double counting”. The choice of measurement devices is  
2156 dictated by radiation response characteristics (dependence on particle type and energy and on  
2157 the quantity to be determined), operational characteristics (direct determination of dose  
2158 quantities, input to model calculations, desired accuracy, dose management and ALARA  
2159 support), as well as practical issues such as reliability, robustness and availability. The  
2160 addition of devices measuring  $y$  and  $L$  distributions of energy deposition in tissue from all  
2161 particles has substantially improved the situation of dosimetry in space.

2162 (154) Another important consideration is the time required for analysis of the measured  
2163 data compared with the duration of the mission. It might be desirable for long duration  
2164 missions that there are read-out facilities for passive devices on board.

2165 (155) Additional passive personal dosimeters may be needed on the astronauts during  
2166 EVA missions to take account of the spatial variations in the degree of shielding provided by  
2167 the spacesuit and the spacecraft.

2168 (156) The development of a set of coefficients that directly relate dose equivalent obtained  
2169 with TLDs and NTDs at the surface of a body to mean organ absorbed dose or dose  
2170 equivalent for the space radiation environment is desirable in principle. It is, however, a very  
2171 difficult task due to the complexity of the radiation field in space. While it might be possible  
2172 for the GCR component, it seems to be impossible for trapped radiation owing to its strong  
2173 variation with time and location.

2174 (157) Neutrons are indirectly ionising particles. They are generated by interactions of  
2175 GCR and higher-energy protons with the atmosphere of Earth, or other body, the spacecraft  
2176 or habitat, or within fellow astronauts. The energy distribution of those neutrons has several  
2177 maxima due to reactions producing neutrons from the incident GCR nuclei or the target  
2178 atoms in spacecraft materials or tissue. The lowest energy maximum occurs as about 1 MeV  
2179 from neutrons produced from the nuclear evaporation process from target atoms in  
2180 interaction with GCR. A second broader maximum occurs at about 100 MeV from knockout  
2181 and cascade reactions leading to fast neutrons from emitted from target nuclei. At higher  
2182 energies, there is an even broader maximum near about 1000 MeV due to neutrons produced  
2183 from the GCR nuclei by either evaporation or knockout and cascade reactions. Various  
2184 methods are applied for neutron monitoring in space (see e.g. Benton et al., 2001). To detect  
2185 absorbed dose to tissue and dose equivalent from the high-LET secondary particles from  
2186 neutrons, and for similar particles produced by strong-force interactions of higher energy  
2187 protons, it is necessary to use detector materials and local shielding that closely matches  
2188 tissue elemental composition.

2189

#### 2190 **4.3.2 Active devices**

2191

2192 (158) Active devices record and display data in real time, or near-real time. This enables  
2193 measurements of fluence or dose rates as well as time integrated values. Most active  
2194 instruments can be turned on or off so as to operate in specific circumstances such as EVA

2195 and during an SPE. Active detectors require electrical power that can be provided through  
2196 connections with power supplies in the spacecraft or through batteries. During recent years a  
2197 broad range of different types of active instruments has been used for radiation measurements  
2198 on board of the ISS either for scientific investigations (see Table 4.1) or for operational area  
2199 monitoring (see Table 4.2). In the following some types of instruments are described.  
2200

2201  
2202  
2203

Table 4.1. Active radiation detectors applied on board the ISS for scientific applications during recent years, some of them in combination with the MATROSHKA phantom (Dettmann et al., 2007).

Instrument	Ref.	Heritage	Measured parameters
DOSMAP	(Reitz et al., 2005)	International collaboration	Various parameters
DOSTEL – Silicon Telescope	(Reitz et al., 2009)	Christian Albrechts University Kiel, German Aerospace Center, Cologne	LET distrib., absorbed dose, dose equivalent
SSD – Silicon Scintillator Device	(Reitz et al., 2009)	Christian Albrechts University Kiel, German Aerospace Center, Cologne	Absorbed dose, neutron dose, organ dose
LIULIN – Silicon Detectors	(Dachev et al., 2006)	Solar Terrestrial Influences Laboratory, Bulgaria	Absorbed dose, dose rate
ALTCRISS – Silicon strip detector	(Casolini et al., 2007)	INFN and University of Rome Tor Vergata, Rome, Italy	Particle energy distrib. up to Iron nuclei, LET distribution, dose equivalent
ALTEA – Silicon strip detector	(Fuglesang, 2007; Narici et al., 2004)		
BBND – Bonner Ball Neutron Detector	(Koshiishi et al., 2007)	Japan Aerospace Exploration Agency, JAXA, Japan	Neutron energy distrib. and neutron dose

2204  
2205

Table 4.2. Active and semi-active radiation detectors used on board the ISS for area monitoring.

Instrument	Ref.	Heritage	Measured parameters	
Tissue equivalent proportional counter (TEPC)	(Badhwar et al., 1994)	NASA Johnson Space Center, Houston	LET distribution, absorbed dose, dose equivalent	
Charged particle detector system (IV-CPDS)	(Lee et al., 2007)		NASA Johnson Space Center, Houston	LET distribution, particle energy distribution, Nuclear abundances up to Oxygen
Charged particle detector system (EV-CPDS)				
Ionisation Chamber (R-16)	(Benghin et al., 2008)	Moscow State University, Moscow	Absorbed dose, dose rate	
Silicon detector units (DB8)		Space Research Institute, Bulgaria	Absorbed dose, dose rate	
TL – system (PILLE)	(Apáthy et al., 2002; 2007)	KFKI, Hungary	Absorbed dose, dose rate	

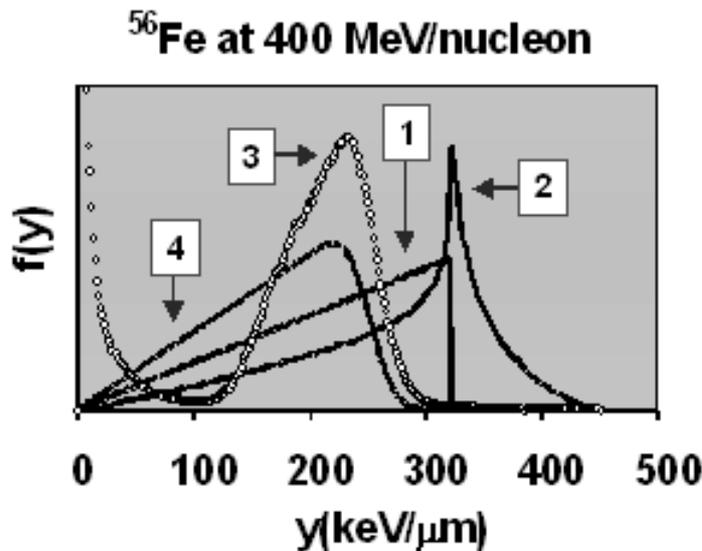
2206  
2207  
2208  
2209  
2210  
2211  
2212  
2213

**Tissue equivalent proportional counters**

(159) A tissue equivalent proportional counter (TEPC) is a low-pressure proportional counter with a wall of tissue-equivalent material especially designed for use in microdosimetry and radiological protection. The pressure of the gas in the detector is chosen to simulate a volume of tissue comparable to the dimensions of the nuclei of a mammalian cell. The charge produced by an ionising particle traversing the chamber volume is collected

2214 and, by calibration of the detector, the electrical signal can be related to the energy loss of the  
 2215 crossing particle in that simulated tissue volume. Data are recorded on an event-by-event  
 2216 basis such that one can obtain a distribution of energy deposition events in a small element of  
 2217 tissue with a known covering material in terms of lineal energy,  $y$ , which can be correlated  
 2218 with LET, and therefore characterizes the ionisation density along tracks of particles and  
 2219 radiation quality. The lineal energy,  $y$ , is defined by the quotient  $\varepsilon/\bar{l}$ , where  $\varepsilon$  is the energy  
 2220 transferred to the chamber gas by ionisation by a crossing particle and  $\bar{l}$  the mean path  
 2221 length of the charged particles in the chamber volume. Consideration should be given to  
 2222 factors which influence performance, such as wall effects.

2223 (160) The response to photons and neutrons depends on the probability of the production  
 2224 of secondary charged particles in the wall passing the detector volume - and hence on the  
 2225 wall material. Mostly materials that are tissue-equivalent with respect to neutrons are chosen,  
 2226 for example A-150 plastic. For incident charged particles, each particle crossing the chamber  
 2227 volume produces a signal. Depending on the shape of the volume, even for incident  
 2228 monoenergetic charged particles a broad  $y$ -distribution is obtained. The  $y$ -distribution is  
 2229 further modified by straggling effects and secondary charged particles produced in the  
 2230 chamber wall (see Fig. 4.1).  
 2231



2232 Fig. 4.1. Frequency distribution,  $f(y)$ , of lineal energy in a TEPC for a uniform fluence of  $^{56}\text{Fe}$  ions.  
 2233 Curves 1 and 2 are calculated by taking the chord length in a sphere (curve 1) and a cylinder (curve 2)  
 2234 times the LET of the Fe-ion. Data of Curve 3 are from measurements with a spherical detector and  
 2235 Curve 4 is the results of a calculation using restricted LET,  $L_{\Delta}$ , and considering straggling (NCRP,  
 2236 2002).  
 2237

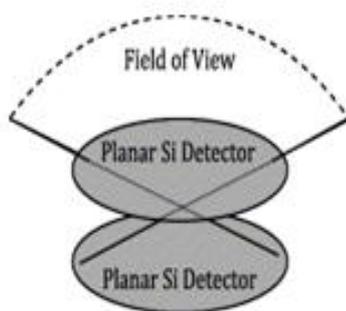
2238 (161) The term  $y \cdot f(y)$  as a function of  $y$  approximates the dose distribution in terms of LET  
 2239 and can be used to determine a mean quality factor for the absorbed dose to the detector  
 2240 configuration (Doke et al., 2001). When the data are integrated over the distribution of  $y$  or  
 2241  $L$ , the TEPC can generate absorbed dose and absorbed dose rate. Data from a TEPC can be  
 2242 displayed continuously or stored for later transmission to mission control. Special TEPC  
 2243 systems have been designed for use in spacecraft (see e.g. Caffrey et al., 2011).  
 2244

2245 **Semiconductor devices**  
 2246

2247 (162) Semiconductor devices for the detection of charged particles are thin diodes, mostly  
 2248 Si-diodes (thickness of about 50 to 5000  $\mu\text{m}$ ), that record the energy deposited by a charged  
 2249 particle in the sensitive volume of the detector. For particles with normal incidence and fully  
 2250 traversing the sensitive detector volume, the ratio of the deposited energy to the thickness of  
 2251 the detector yields the approximate LET for the incident particle in that material. If charged  
 2252 particles from various directions pass the detector, a mean path length in the sensitive  
 2253 detector volume need to be determined for assessing an LET-distribution. Thus, a single  
 2254 detector can approximately provide an estimate of the charged particle fluence distribution in  
 2255 linear energy transfer and time. This distribution can be integrated to yield dose and dose rate  
 2256 for protons and heavier charged particles in the detector material, and by the use of  
 2257 conversion coefficients, determine dose to tissue. Often some detectors are used as a  
 2258 telescope which restricts the response to a smaller solid angle.

2259 (163) Several multi-array solid-state detectors are combined to form a particle telescope  
 2260 that measures both energy deposition and flight direction. When these data are combined, the  
 2261 detector yields a more accurate estimate of LET in the detector material, and thus the  
 2262 distribution of fluence in LET, direction, and time. Using appropriate conversion coefficients,  
 2263 the data can also be used to obtain  $D(L)$  distributions and  $Q$ -values for heavy charged  
 2264 particles, but with the restriction that the incident particles originate from a fixed direction  
 2265 depending on the orientation of the detector. Because of size limitations, this type of detector  
 2266 is only sensitive over a restricted solid angle.

2267 (164) The energy lost in solid-state detectors of a telescope can also be used to identify the  
 2268 particle charge as well as the incident energy to ultimately obtain the distribution of fluence  
 2269 in energy, particle charge number and time. Several of these detectors can be combined to  
 2270 point in different directions to provide a more complete description of the radiation field  
 2271 either outside or inside a spacecraft.  
 2272



(a)

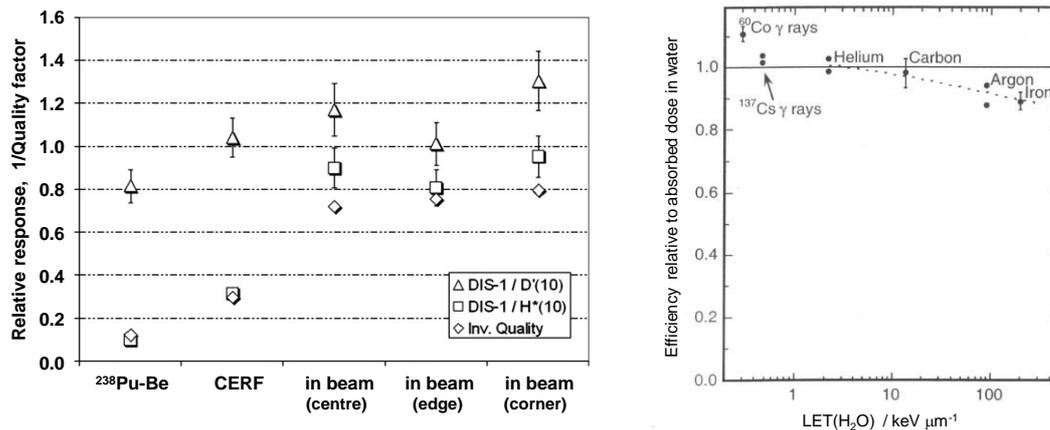
(b)

2273  
 2274  
 2275  
 2276 Fig. 4.2. Charged particle spectrometer DOSTEL designed for space applications (Posner et al.,  
 2277 2005). Schematic view (a) and realized detector (b) (Beaujean et al., 2002).  
 2278

### Direct ion storage devices

2280 (165) This device combines an ionisation chamber with a semiconductor device.  
 2281 Specifically, the direct ion storage dosimeter, DIS, is based on coupling a gas-filled ion  
 2282 chamber with a semiconductor non-volatile memory cell where the charges produced in the  
 2283 chamber volume are stored. These are compact integrating devices that can be read out  
 2284 periodically without deleting the information and are used to estimate accumulated doses

2285 over periods of several hours to at least one year. The response of the DIS to charged  
 2286 particles incident on the detector and passing the chamber volume is approximately equal to  
 2287 the energy deposited, while the response to photons and neutrons incident on the DIS and  
 2288 producing secondary charged particles in the detector depends on the material and thickness  
 2289 of the chamber wall. The response to low-energy charged particles incident on the DIS  
 2290 depends also on the chamber wall thickness due to their energy loss in the wall.  
 2291



2292 Fig. 4.3. Relative response of the DIS-1 dosimeter.  
 2293

2294 (a) Dosimeter reading in terms of personal dose equivalent,  $H_p(\text{DIS})$ , normalised to absorbed dose in  
 2295 10 mm depth of tissue,  $D(10)$ , (triangles), and ambient dose equivalent,  $H^*(10)$  (squares). The inverse  
 2296 of the quality factor,  $1/Q$ , is also indicated (diamonds) (Otto, 2010).

2297 (b) Efficiencies of DIS-1 relative to absorbed dose in water as a function of LET(H<sub>2</sub>O). Each point  
 2298 for  $^{60}\text{Co}$ - $\gamma$  radiation, carbon and iron ions represents an average value from six samples (1 s.d.). Two  
 2299 of the samples were irradiated with each of three doses (10 mGy, 25 mGy, and 50 mGy in water).  
 2300 Points for  $^{137}\text{Cs}$ - $\gamma$  radiation, helium ions and argon ions represent two samples irradiated with a dose  
 2301 of 10 mGy. (Yasuda, 2001).  
 2302

2303 **Bonner sphere spectrometer**

2304 (166) In principle, a Bonner sphere spectrometer consisting of a set of Bonner spheres of  
 2305 different size is well suited for measuring neutron fluence and spectral distributions of  
 2306 neutrons. On ground, neutrons over a wide energy range are often monitored by such  
 2307 moderator-based survey instruments whose responses have also been extended to higher  
 2308 energies by introducing a layer of heavy metal in their moderator (see e.g. Wiegel et al.,  
 2309 2000). However, those instruments are not suitable for use in spacecraft because of their  
 2310 heavy weight as well as their high sensitivity to HZE particles. A Bonner Ball Neutron  
 2311 Detector (BBND) was used on Space Shuttle flight (Matsumoto et al., 2001) and on ISS  
 2312 (Koshiishi et al., 2007) for measuring the fluence of neutrons with energies below about 15  
 2313 MeV. However, also high-energy neutrons are present in spacecraft (see par. 158). Thus,  
 2314 development of a new instrument having a light weight and less sensitivity to HZE particles  
 2315 is necessary for precisely monitoring neutron fluence or doses in spacecraft.  
 2316

2317 **Electron detectors**

2318 (167) Active electron detectors need to be specially configured to measure low-LET  
 2319 radiations, in particular, electrons below about 1 MeV. Electrons of these energies are  
 2320 normally not an issue inside the spacecraft but could be of concern during EVA, since  
 2321 electrons above a few hundred keV can penetrate the spacesuits. Since the trapped electron

2322 fluence rate can change by many orders of magnitude during and following a large magnetic  
2323 storm, due to short-term perturbations of the geomagnetic field, it is recommended that an  
2324 active detector sensitive to electrons be installed outside the spacecraft to serve as a monitor  
2325 for fluctuations in the electron component of the space radiation environment to enable dose  
2326 management during EVAs. Such a monitor could be a simple ionisation chamber or solid-  
2327 state detector with a wall thickness sufficient to strongly attenuate very low energy electrons  
2328 but thin enough to record electrons that could penetrate a spacesuit (Evans et al., 2008).  
2329

### 2330 **Active personal dosimeters**

2331 (168) Active personal dosimeters (APD) can give an instant indication of both  
2332 accumulated dose and dose rate. Preset visual and audible alarms are also provided, so that  
2333 these devices can be used simultaneously as an integrating dosimeter and as an alarm  
2334 dosimeter. APD can be used as supplementary dosimeters to a passive dosimeter used for  
2335 routine dosimetry. It is clear that for low-LET radiation the energy and directional response  
2336 characteristics of APD are, in most cases, as good as passive dosimeters, able to measure  
2337 doses in continuous radiation fields with acceptable accuracy.

2338 (169) An ideal personal dosimeter would be active, store integrated dose data and dose  
2339 rate time profiles, and respond to all field components allowing a sufficiently precise  
2340 determination of absorbed dose rate and dose equivalent rate to adjacent tissues. Most  
2341 available electronic personal dosimeters have been designed to measure absorbed dose to  
2342 tissue under a defined covering layer from photon and beta radiation and their high-LET  
2343 response characteristics are not well determined. Such dosimeters might be considered for  
2344 the measurement of the low-LET component of the fields in spacecraft/habitat. However,  
2345 even if used only to determine the low-LET component, a full characterization of their  
2346 charged-particle and neutron response is necessary. Pixel-based detectors can be used as  
2347 personal dosimeters. They can provide energy deposit distributions, energy and charge for all  
2348 particles. They are based on a read out chip that embeds the electronics for each pixel within  
2349 the pixel's footprint. Careful calibration is necessary as for other devices.

2350 (170) If active personal dosimeters are not used, then it may be necessary to develop on-  
2351 board readout capabilities for passive dosimeters, especially on long-duration missions in  
2352 space. Although on-board readout of nuclear etched track detectors is not feasible, on-board  
2353 systems for readout of TL- and OSL-dosimeters already exist.  
2354

### 2355 **4.3.3 Passive devices**

2356  
2357 (171) Passive devices can be used for both area monitoring and personal monitoring. No  
2358 single passive device is capable of dose measurement across the full energy and direction  
2359 distribution of particles available in space. The instrumentation and detectors should be  
2360 designed to have optimum performance in the types of particles noted above, namely: low-  
2361 LET charged particles (*i.e.*  $L < 10 \text{ keV } \mu\text{m}^{-1}$ ), including such particle produced by non-  
2362 ionising particles incident on the instrumentation; high-LET charged particles from neutrons  
2363 and protons that undergo strong-force interactions; and high-LET heavy charged particles  
2364 (HZE). While thermoluminescence detectors (TLD) radiophotoluminescence glasses (RPL),  
2365 and optically stimulated luminescence dosimeters (OSLD) are used mostly for photon and  
2366 electron dosimetry, as well as for neutron dosimetry, plastic nuclear etched track detectors  
2367 (PNTD) are well suited for measurements in neutron and heavy charged particle fields. In  
2368 space applications, measurement systems combining both detector types are often used in  
2369 personal dosimetry.

2370 **Luminescence detectors**

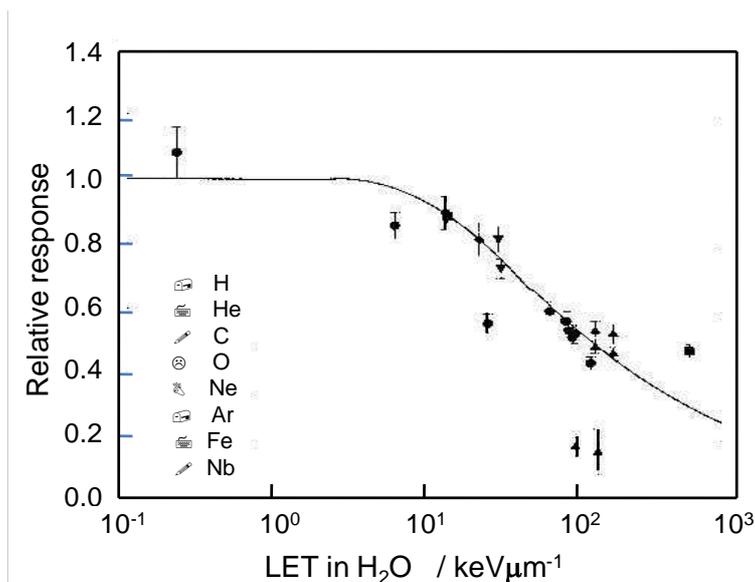
2371 (172) Passive dosimeters currently in use are mostly thermoluminescence detectors  
 2372 (TLD). TLDs are small sintered chips or pellets of crystals which show luminescence after  
 2373 exposure to ionising radiation. By fast controlled heating of the crystal, the stored energy is  
 2374 released as light emitted. The function between the actual temperature and the intensity of the  
 2375 emitted light (the glow curve) shows various peaks, the heights of which are proportional to  
 2376 absorbed dose. Various crystal materials doped with different elements are in use for personal  
 2377 dosimetry.

2378 (173) An alternative to TLD is the use of radiophotoluminescence glasses (RPL). Small  
 2379 glass elements respond as do TLDs to incident ionising radiation, storing energy in  
 2380 metastable electronic levels. The energy is released as light when the glass is exposed to ultra  
 2381 violet laser illumination.

2382 (174) Optically stimulated luminescence dosimeters (OSLD) have also be proposed. In  
 2383 OSLD, the stored energy is released by optical laser stimulation. TLDs, RPL glasses, OSLD  
 2384 material, or similar types of dosimeters, will have to be fully characterized for the specific  
 2385 space environment.

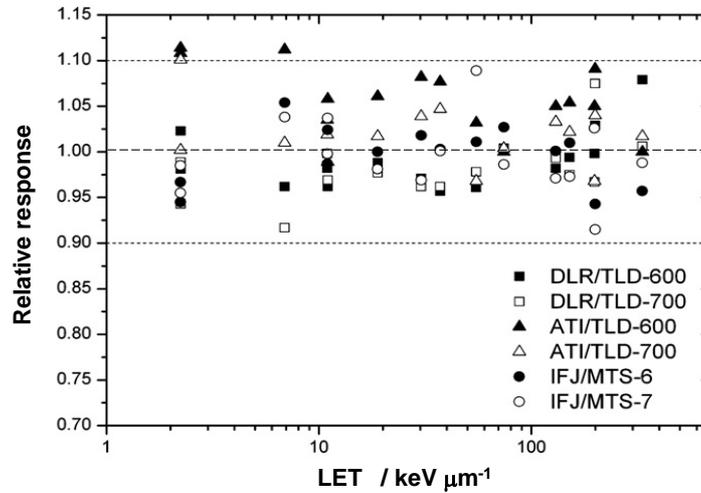
2386 (175) There might be a need for some passive elements to be read out frequently on board,  
 2387 and others that are read only on return to Earth. The mode of readout of the luminescence  
 2388 dosimeters should be carefully considered.

2389 (176) TLDs, RPL glasses, and OSLDs measure absorbed dose in their material and are  
 2390 mostly calibrated in terms of absorbed dose in tissue or water in <sup>137</sup>Cs or <sup>60</sup>Co gamma  
 2391 radiation reference fields. The detector response, relative to the response to the reference  
 2392 radiation depends on the ionisation density around the track of a traversing particle. While for  
 2393  $L < 10$  keV/μm there is mostly only a small  $L$ -dependence of the response, TLDs, RPL  
 2394 glasses, and OSLDs show a strong LET-dependence above about 10 keV/μm, generally with  
 2395 decreasing response with increasing LET (see Fig. 4.4). This needs to be well known for  
 2396 dosimetry in space radiation fields. Fig 4.5 shows the relative variation of the response of  
 2397 some TLDs to cosmic radiation and ions with different LET-values in the detectors.  
 2398



2399 Fig. 4.4. Relative response of TLDs for various charged particles. The relative response (relative to  
 2400 <sup>60</sup>Co-γ rays) of peak 5 from TLD-600 and TLD-700 versus mean LET (in water) in the detector is  
 2401 shown (Benton et al., 2000; Berger et al., 2006).  
 2402

2403



2404

2405

2406

2407

2408

Fig. 4.5. Relative response of various TLDs (normalized to the mean value) to cosmic radiation and ion beams with different LET values in the detector; current results of the intercomparison of personal dosimeters (HAMLET) (Bilski et al, 2011).

2409

### Nuclear track detectors

2410

2411

2412

2413

2414

2415

2416

2417

2418

2419

2420

2421

2422

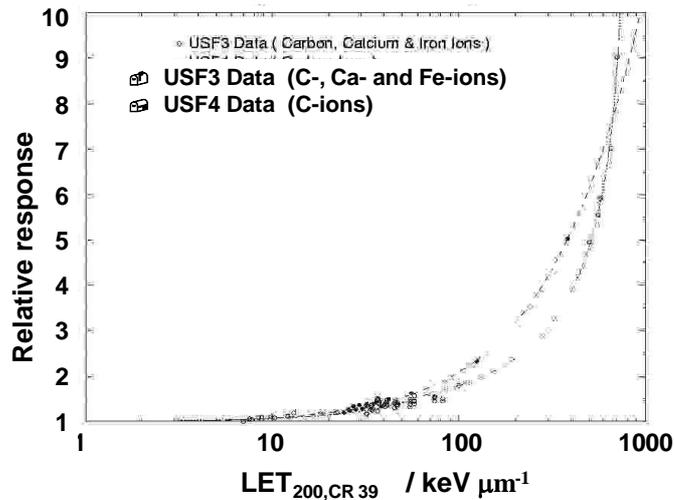
2423

2424

2425

2426

(177) To detect the high-LET component of the radiation field, plastic nuclear etched track detectors (PNTD) and nuclear emulsions can be employed. Damage to the material is caused by the passage of a charged particle, and these particle tracks can be viewed microscopically, either before or after being realized by suitable chemical treatment. Etched track detectors are generally insensitive for radiation with an LET in water below about  $10 \text{ keV } \mu\text{m}^{-1}$  (depending on material) and may be employed in a method that provides  $D$ ,  $D(L)$ , or  $D$  averaged over certain ranges of  $L$ , and  $H$ . With suitable detector sets, etched track detectors and nuclear emulsions can determine the charged particle type and its direction in the detection medium, and can allow an analysis of the radiation field at the position of the detector. The analysis of the response of polyallyldiglycolcarbonate (PADC), commonly named CR-39, in terms of the dependence on LET allows the determination of absorbed dose and dose equivalent to a small element of tissue from all charged particles above about  $10 \text{ keV } \mu\text{m}^{-1}$  (Zhou et.al., 2006). The detectors can separate the heavy charged particle and neutron contributions by looking at the particle ranges. A further separation procedure to detect the neutron dose component can be made using thin detectors and coincidence techniques or by using of a thin PADC detector and a combination of electrochemical and chemical etching. Stacks of PADC detectors can be used for spectrometry of HZE particles (see e.g. Gunther et al., 2002)



2427 Fig. 4.6. Relative response of PADC detectors (CR-39) as a function of restricted LET,  $L_{200}$   
 2428 (O’Sullivan et al., 1999; Zhou et al., 2008).  
 2429  
 2430

2431 **Superheated emulsions**

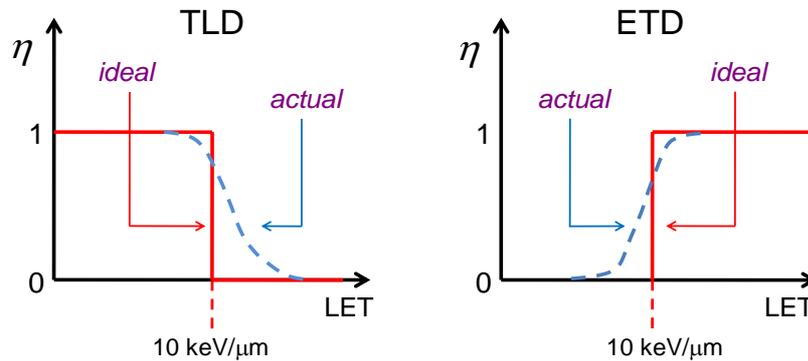
2432 (178) Superheated emulsion detectors, sometimes referred to as superheated drop or  
 2433 bubble detectors, are small droplets of a liquid above its normal boiling point suspended in a  
 2434 viscoelastic medium. The droplets remain in the liquid phase until a charged particle interacts  
 2435 inside or near the surface of the droplet. This transfers energy to the droplet and may cause  
 2436 local evaporation. If sufficient energy has been transferred and a critical radius is exceeded,  
 2437 all the liquid in the droplet will be vaporized and the bubble becomes visible. Superheated  
 2438 emulsion detectors respond to neutrons and to heavy-charged particles. A clear calibration  
 2439 procedure is required. Recent data on bubble detector responses are presented by Lewis et al.  
 2440 (Lewis et al, 2012).

2441 **Combined detector systems**

2442 (179) A combination of one detector for the measurement of the low-LET component and  
 2443 one for the high-LET component can allow the determination of dose equivalent in the  
 2444 complex radiation field in space. For passive dosimetry, with a package of TLD (or OSLD)  
 2445 and PNTD, the dose equivalent in adjacent tissue near the surface of the body is determined  
 2446 by:  
 2447

2448 
$$H = D_{\text{TLD}} - \int_{L > 10 \text{ keV}/\mu\text{m}} \eta_{\text{TLD}}(L) D_{\text{TLD}}(L) dL + \int_{L > 10 \text{ keV}/\mu\text{m}} D_{\text{ETD}}(L) Q(L) dL - \int_{L < 10 \text{ keV}/\mu\text{m}} \eta_{\text{ETD}}(L) D_{\text{ETD}}(L) dL \quad (4.1)$$
  
 2449

2450 where  $D_{\text{TLD}}$  is the total absorbed dose recorded by the TLD (equivalent also for OSLD).  
 2451  $D_{\text{PNTD}}(L)$  is the absorbed dose distribution in LET determined by the etched track detector in  
 2452 the high-LET range ( $L > 10 \text{ keV } \mu\text{m}^{-1}$ ) and for which  $Q$  is dependent upon  $L$ . The correction  
 2453 terms consider the non-zero response of the TLD.  $\eta_{\text{TLD}}(L)$  is the relative dose response in the  
 2454 region  $L > 10 \text{ keV}/\mu\text{m}$  and  $\eta_{\text{ETD}}(L)$  that of the PNTD, respectively, in the region  
 2455  $L < 10 \text{ keV}/\mu\text{m}$ , so that intermediate LET components are not considered twice. It is  
 2456 recognized that this requires the verification of the LET-dependence of both the low-LET and  
 2457 high-LET detector system, and the elimination of parts from overlapping of responses.  
 2458



2459  
2460

2461 Fig. 4.7. Schematic relative dose responses of a TLD and a PNTD.

2462

2463

2464

2465

2466

2467

2468

2469

2470

#### 4.4 Biomarkers of exposure

2471

2472

2473

2474

2475

2476

2477

2478

2479

2480

2481

2482

2483

2484

2485

2486

2487

2488

#### Micronuclei

2489

2490

2491

2492

2493

2494

2495

2496

(182) Micronuclei result from loss of whole chromosomes or acentric chromosome fragments from daughter nuclei following cell division. They appear as small, membrane-bounded inclusions in the cytoplasm. Their assessment is relatively easy and rapid and by including cytochalasin B in the cell cultures analysis of cells is restricted to those in their 2nd post-exposure cycle. This has greatly increased the sensitivity of the assay. If individual pre-exposure levels of micronucleus frequency are available, absorbed doses as low as 50 mGy can be detected; without knowledge of the background frequency the detection level is

2497 estimated to be 100 mGy. A modification of the assay uses a fluorescent pan-centromere  
2498 probe to distinguish two types of micronuclei - those derived from either whole chromosomes  
2499 or from chromosome fragments. By restricting analysis to the fragment type much of the  
2500 background noise in the assay can be reduced (Vral et al., 1997).

2501 (183) The frequency of micronuclei has been used for estimating exposures for a number  
2502 of radiation accidents with reasonable agreement with physical dose estimates. The  
2503 drawbacks are that few studies have been performed with high-LET exposures, and the assay  
2504 is not reliable for partial body exposures. Micronuclei are unstable structures meaning that  
2505 their frequency reduces with time due to the turnover of lymphocytes. This makes the assay  
2506 unsuitable as a biodosimeter in astronauts exposed to space radiations over prolonged  
2507 missions.

2508

#### 2509 **Acentric fragments in prematurely condensed chromosomes (PCC)**

2510 (184) Interphase chromosomes can be prematurely condensed to be observable  
2511 microscopically either by fusion with mitotic cells or by treatment with a phosphatase  
2512 inhibitor (calyculin A) (Blakely et al., 2003). Structural and numerical chromosomal  
2513 alterations can be observed as an increase (or decrease) in centric chromosome number or  
2514 from the presence of acentric fragments. The method has been used in a laboratory setting to  
2515 assess exposure to x-rays and gamma radiation. The advantages are that non-dividing cells  
2516 can be used for assay and the analysis is quite straightforward. The current drawback is that  
2517 the assay has had no application as a true biodosimeter, and issues such as responsiveness to  
2518 partial body exposures or chronic exposures have not been addressed. Further investigation  
2519 appears warranted for assessing the value of PCC as a biodosimeter in the space environment.

2520 (185) The fact that this PCC method has not been used in biodosimetry means that a lower  
2521 detection level has not been established. A reasonable assumption is that it will be no more  
2522 sensitive than other cytogenetic methods, given similar cell numbers analyzed. The  
2523 advantage is a greater ease in obtaining large numbers of cells for analysis. As with  
2524 micronuclei, this signal also is unstable with time due to the replacement of lymphocytes  
2525 from the stem cell pool.

2526

#### 2527 **Chromosomal aberrations**

2528 (186) The method that has been most extensively used in biodosimetry is that of the  
2529 analysis of structural chromosome aberrations. The incorporation of fluorescence in situ  
2530 hybridization (FISH) techniques (Cornforth, 2001; Edwards, 2005) has enabled the  
2531 assessment of symmetrical (transmissible) translocations. Unlike the assays described above,  
2532 these are stable aberrations that pass successfully through cell division and are more suited to  
2533 prolonged space missions. This allows for reliable dose estimation at long times after  
2534 exposure. Chromosome aberration dosimetry has been successfully applied to radiation  
2535 accident victims, A-bomb survivors and a wide range of occupationally and medically  
2536 exposed persons including astronauts (George, et al., 2001; Cucinotta et al., 2008). These  
2537 scenarios include chronic exposures and partial body exposures for which specific methods  
2538 have been developed to aid in exposure estimation. The distribution of aberrations among  
2539 cells is useful in this regard. Even with this strong record of success, the application of the  
2540 method for dosimetry in astronauts in space has some drawbacks as evidenced by published  
2541 studies (reviewed in Testard and Sabatier, 1999; and by Obe et al., 1999). One problem is the  
2542 inter-individual variation in response which, however, can be overcome by individual  
2543 calibration and determination of background in advance. The response is generally low due to  
2544 the nature of the exposures by which only a small number of cells will actually be traversed.

2545 This is especially the case for heavy charged particles. On the other hand, the effective area  
2546 (or volume) of the blood system which is distributed over the whole body, is much larger  
2547 than that of a passive dosimeter – biodosimetry sees the rare events better than a small  
2548 physical dosimeter.

2549 (187) Additional laboratory investigation is required in order to consider using cytogenetic  
2550 analysis as a reliable dosimeter for space missions. Biodosimetry assays take skilled  
2551 technicians to implement. The level of skill and time, however, to analyze data is no more  
2552 demanding than physical dosimetry and the costs of biodosimetry are lower than physical  
2553 dosimetry if the launch mass and crew time involved for physical dosimetry is considered.

2554 (188) The detection of low doses using chromosomal aberrations is dependent upon the  
2555 number of cells analyzed and whether an individual calibration curve is made prior to the  
2556 exposure of interest. This point is addressed by Bauchinger (1995) who estimates that for  
2557 5,000 cells analyzed (using a generalized background frequency for dicentrics) a significant  
2558 increase in dicentrics should be observed at about 100 mGy for a group of individuals.  
2559 Twenty thousand cells would need to be analyzed to detect 50 mGy. Knowledge of the pre-  
2560 exposure dicentric frequency can lower this detection level without increasing the number of  
2561 cells analyzed.

2562 (189) The study by Tucker et al. (1997) reports a lower detection level of about 500 mSv  
2563 of effective dose for occupationally exposed individuals using FISH analysis of stable  
2564 aberrations. The exposure was chronic in this case; a situation for which this type of  
2565 translocation analysis is particularly applicable. Again, the sensitivity of the assay would be  
2566 increased by having available the pre-exposure aberrations frequency. It might be further  
2567 increased if the dose response to a reference radiation is determined using a blood sample  
2568 obtained prior to space missions (George, et al. 2001). The number of painted chromosomes  
2569 used also impacts the sensitivity of the assay. The older studies painted only one or two  
2570 chromosomes. Newer studies involved a larger number of chromosome paints or painting the  
2571 entire genome which increases the sensitivity. Tucker has recently reviewed the low-dose  
2572 sensitivity of the FISH translocations assay (Tucker, 2008).

2573

#### 2574 **Other biomarker methods**

2575 (190) Several other assays as biomarker approaches have been proposed or recently  
2576 developed. These include complementary DNA (cDNA) arrays to measure gene expression  
2577 (Mezentsev et al., 2011), prolonged life span of erythrocytes bearing transferrin receptors  
2578 on their membrane (Gong et al., 1999), gene mutation assays, and electron paramagnetic  
2579 resonance (EPR) spectroscopy. A review on EPR dosimetry with tooth enamel is given by  
2580 Fattibene and Callens (Fattibene et al., 2010). For these methods to be applied to space  
2581 biodosimetry, the dose, radiation quality and duration of the signal over many months will  
2582 need to be understood. A more recent assay is the measurement of telomere length.  
2583 Telomeres are the short repetitive DNA regions that cap the end of chromosomes protecting  
2584 them from deterioration. Reduction in the average length of the telomere has been associated  
2585 with several late effects including cancer, neurological disorders, and aging (Schoeftner et al.,  
2586 2009). Measurement techniques include southern blot, Q-FISH (Williams et al., 2011), and  
2587 flow cytometry. These latter two assays allow rapid analysis of many cells. However, the  
2588 radiation quality and dose response of the assay to protons and heavy ions irradiation will  
2589 have to be studied further before it can be considered for a deployable biodosimeter for space  
2590 missions.

2591

#### 2592 **4.5 Instrument characterization and calibration**

2593

2594 (191) For instrument characterization and calibration in a laboratory, it is necessary to  
2595 clearly specify the relevant calibration conditions, including the characteristics of the  
2596 reference radiation source, the irradiation facility, and the conversion coefficients used.  
2597 Periodic, accurate calibrations are essential, as are meaningful instrument response  
2598 comparisons. Calibration (ISO, 2007; JCGM, 2008a) covers a number of the procedures  
2599 included in a type test. In the first step, a series of calibration factors (or calibration  
2600 coefficients, see below) or responses may be determined for a set of reference conditions,  
2601 usually a set of radiation energies and angles, to establish a matrix of calibration  
2602 factors/coefficients or responses, or a calibration/response function. The second step, when  
2603 used, applies these data to obtain the value of the desired quantity from the instrument  
2604 indication.

2605 (192) All instrumentation should be fully tested prior to use. This procedure is especially  
2606 important for applications in space where an exchange of instruments during a mission is  
2607 often not possible. Failure of any part of the test should be clearly detailed and reasons for the  
2608 failure considered. Fully tested means the determination of the instrument performance  
2609 characteristics, including detection limit; tests of influence quantities, including other particle  
2610 field components; and tests of the reliability of the complete system, including system  
2611 software.

2612 (193) For a fully tested instrument, a reference calibration (determination of a single  
2613 calibration factor or calibration coefficient for one set of reference conditions) is sufficient to  
2614 ensure a traceable absolute dose measurement. The reference calibration of the instrument  
2615 should be repeated at regular intervals. This may not be possible in space applications, but  
2616 then there should be periodic checks on the performance which may be carried out using non-  
2617 reference fields and a fixed procedure. In addition to the type test, some instrument should  
2618 have a traceable individual normalization/calibration factor. For reusable dosimeters, this  
2619 factor should be checked periodically and adjusted if necessary.

2620 (194) The response characteristics of all the types of devices should be determined by a  
2621 combination of calculation and measurements. By Monte Carlo or other simulations the  
2622 response of an instrument is determined in terms of particle fluence, and its energy  
2623 distribution. The energy dependence of the response should be simulated for the particle  
2624 types and range of energies relevant to the radiation fields in space, plus the angle  
2625 dependence of response of the instrument, if any. The simulated instrument response must be  
2626 benchmarked in reference radiation fields. For the simulation of the response characteristics  
2627 of personal dosimeters, some irradiations should be performed with the dosimeter positioned  
2628 on either an anthropomorphic phantom or a surrogate.

2629 (195) Where an instrument consists of more than one detector or more than one signal  
2630 channel, the result of any algorithm to calculate the measured value is to be treated as the  
2631 instrument indication in all determinations of calibration coefficient or factor or response.

2632 (196) Experimental response data for the active and passive devices used should be  
2633 determined for the following energy ranges as appropriate: protons from below 10 MeV to 1  
2634 GeV; helium from 10 MeV/u to 1 GeV/u; high-Z, high-energy ions (e.g. C, Si, Fe) from 50  
2635 MeV/u to 1 GeV/u; electrons from 0.5 MeV to 10 MeV; and neutrons from about 1 MeV to  
2636 400 MeV, monoenergetic or quasi-monoenergetic; plus response data for fields which  
2637 replicate the field produced by the interactions of GCR with shielding material. All the  
2638 radiation fields used must be well characterized and traceable to national standards (NMI) or  
2639 related to NMIs via a traceability network (for example, quasi-monoenergetic neutron fields)  
2640 or as part of an international comparison programme (for example, ICCHIBAN (Uchihori et

2641 al., 2002; Yasuda et al., 2006)).

2642 (197) There are a number of ISO standards for photon, beta and neutron radiation,  
2643 covering radiation fields for most radiation protection situations on Earth. The situation for  
2644 space applications is more complex. Well specified mixed radiation reference fields with very  
2645 high energy particles and a large component of heavy ions do not exist on Earth. There are  
2646 radiation fields available at very high energy accelerators (for example EG at GSI in  
2647 Germany; HIMAC, TIARA, CYRIC, and RCNP in Japan; NASA Space Radiation Lab at  
2648 BNL in the USA; TSL in Sweden; NPI in the Czech Republic; iThemba in South Africa;  
2649 NFS in France, CERN in Switzerland) which include a broad range of secondary particles  
2650 produced in the shielding surrounding a target. Such radiation fields replicate components of  
2651 the radiation fields in space and have been used for testing and intercomparison  
2652 measurements of various detector systems (Mitaroff et al., 2002). The precise specification of  
2653 these radiation fields, however, can be a problem. Calculations are needed for the beam  
2654 particle and secondary particles, fluence rate and its energy distribution, plus any scattered  
2655 components. The specific detector response to heavy ions can also be determined using  
2656 beams from heavy ion accelerators where the fluence rate of the heavy ion considered is well  
2657 specified.

2658 (198) Determination of the dosimetric characteristics of the instrument (device or  
2659 combination of devices) and its reference calibration are closely interlinked. The result of a  
2660 response characterization is the detailed description of the dosimetric properties of a given  
2661 instrument. This includes the dependence of the response on particle type, energy, angle of  
2662 radiation incidence, and on various influence quantities. A reference calibration without a  
2663 prior dosimetric characterization can be misleading, as the calibration can be misinterpreted  
2664 as applying to the radiation field in space without correction. An instrument dedicated to a  
2665 specific type of radiation (e.g. to neutrons) can have a response also for other particle types.  
2666 This needs also to be taken into account by calibrations.

2667 (199) In modern instruments, the software has become of increasing importance for the  
2668 generation of the measured value. Therefore, the final version of the software should be  
2669 available at the beginning of the type test, as a great part of the software test is indirectly  
2670 covered by the metrological test. The manufacturer should be aware of the fact that any  
2671 change of the software may invalidate the type test. Dosimetry system software should be  
2672 guided by the WELMEC software guide 7.2 (WELMEC, 2008).

2673

#### 2674 **4.6 Accuracy and uncertainties for measurements in spacecraft**

2675

2676 (200) Astronauts are exposed to complex, multi-component fields that are difficult to  
2677 determine routinely. Radiation quality-weighted organ absorbed doses can be significant, and  
2678 a main objective is that the uncertainties in the fluence rate and its energy distribution and in  
2679 the assessments of detector absorbed dose and radiation quality should be minimized.  
2680 Nevertheless, one of the objectives should be to meet the general requirement that the total  
2681 relative combined standard uncertainty of detector absorbed dose or dose equivalent should  
2682 be minimized. The total relative uncertainty in a subsequent estimate of organ dose or dose  
2683 equivalent will be greater.

2684 (201) The uncertainty in measurement assesses the measurement accuracy or metrological  
2685 quality of measurements or fitness for purpose of a measured quantity value. Measurement  
2686 accuracy is an assessment of the uncertainty. Guidance is based on documents and  
2687 recommendations prepared by the Joint Committee for Guides in Metrology (JCGM), which  
2688 gives definitions and guidance for metrology in general. These are available from the website

2689 of the Bureau International des Poids et Mesures: JCGM 200 (JCGM, 2008a), JCGM 100  
2690 (JCGM, 2008b), and JCGM 104 (JCGM, 2009). These definitions and guidance are  
2691 published by the International Organization for Standards (ISO) and the International  
2692 Electrochemical Committee (IEC) (ISO/IEC Guide 99, 2007; ISO/IEC Guide 98-3, 2005;  
2693 ISO/IEC Guide 98-1, 2009).

2694 (202) An essential aspect of quality assurance is assessing to what extent is it reasonable to  
2695 believe that the reported number is a good estimate of the true dose value. The greater this  
2696 belief, the confidence or probability that the measured value is within a certain defined range  
2697 around the true value, or rather that the true value is within a certain range of the observed  
2698 value, the better the quality of the measurement. In the evaluation of the uncertainty, all  
2699 knowledge of the instrument and evaluating system both from experience and from type  
2700 testing should be used possibly in combination with detailed information on the instrument  
2701 assembly usage.

2702 (203) In order to obtain dose data of which the quality is traceable and can be recognized it  
2703 is recommended that the terms and definitions given in the documents issued by the JCGM  
2704 and the ISO framework should be followed. In the formulation stage, all input/influence  
2705 quantities that may contribute to the uncertainty should be identified, and must be considered  
2706 in the measurement model; all model input/influence quantities should be characterized by a  
2707 best estimate and either a probability density function (PDF) or a (combined) standard  
2708 uncertainty. The shape of the PDF can be taken from measured data or from an assigned  
2709 distribution. Results from a type test or other characterization of the response of a dosimetry  
2710 system may be used as inputs to the uncertainty assessment; other parameters such as  
2711 standard uncertainty and coverage intervals must be derived from the PDF of the output  
2712 quantity.

2713 (204) ICRP in Publication 75 (ICRP, 1997) recommends that "In practice, it is usually  
2714 possible to achieve an accuracy of about 10 % at the 95 % confidence level for measurements  
2715 of radiation fields in good laboratory conditions. In the workplace where the energy and  
2716 directional distribution of the particles in the radiation field are generally not well known, the  
2717 uncertainties of an assessment will be significantly greater. Non-uniformity and uncertain  
2718 orientation of the radiation field will introduce errors in the use of standard models. The  
2719 overall uncertainty at the 95% confidence level in the estimation of effective dose around the  
2720 relevant dose limit may well be a factor of 1.5 in either direction for photons and may be  
2721 substantially greater for neutrons of uncertain energy, and for electrons. Greater uncertainties  
2722 are also inevitable at low levels of effective dose for all qualities of radiation." These  
2723 statements of ICRP strictly apply to the assessment of  $E$  and  $H_T$  for occupational exposure at  
2724 low doses on Earth. ICRU has published recommendations on the acceptable levels of total  
2725 uncertainty for dose measurements in radiological protection in Reports 47 and 66 (ICRU,  
2726 1992, 2001) which are broadly consistent with ICRP statements. ICRU recommends for  
2727 single measurements of the operational quantities that "...in most cases, an overall  
2728 uncertainty of one standard deviation of 30% should be acceptable" and states "The error of  
2729 instruments may substantially exceed this limit at some radiation energies and for certain  
2730 angles of incidence, but conform to it when they occur in a radiation field with a broad  
2731 energy spectrum and broad angular distribution".

2732 (205) The statistical uncertainty of laboratory calibrations is commonly far less than the  
2733 above uncertainties. However, the absorbed-dose and dose-equivalent response of devices are  
2734 frequently appreciably energy- and angle-dependent. In order to minimize the total  
2735 uncertainty in practical measurements, either determination of the response is required for the  
2736 radiation field in which it is to be used, or a simulation of this field may be used to determine

2737 and apply correction factors to the calibration factor of an instrument. It may also be possible  
2738 to calculate the response in this field from the knowledge of the field and of the detailed  
2739 energy- and angle-dependence of response of the device. Frequently, it is the direction  
2740 distribution of the field which has the largest influence. For measurements in space,  
2741 additional information on the particle type, energy and direction distributions, are available.  
2742 Using these data, accuracies of better than a factor of 1.5 at the 95% confidence level  
2743 (equivalent to a standard deviation for a normal distribution of about 0.25) should be  
2744 achieved for the estimation of organ absorbed dose and organ dose equivalent.

2745 (206) At doses approaching or exceeding mission risk limits, or career risk limits, the  
2746 upper 95% coverage probability is used to include the measurement uncertainty for the  
2747 assessment of the cancer risk projections from estimations of organ doses and radiation  
2748 quality and tissue weighting factors (see Sect. 7.5). Obviously, reduction of measurement  
2749 uncertainties is seen to be an important task for mission planning.

2750  
2751

## 2752 **5. RADIATION FIELDS INSIDE SPACECRAFT AND ON** 2753 **PLANETARY SURFACES**

2754

2755 (207) The radiation field inside or near spacecraft includes various components of the  
2756 primary radiation field in space (see Chapter 2) partially absorbed in the walls of the  
2757 spacecraft and secondary radiation which is produced by scattering and reactions of the  
2758 primary radiation in the walls and other materials within the spacecraft. Due to both the  
2759 variation of the primary radiation field with time and to the non-homogeneous distribution of  
2760 materials within the spacecraft the internal radiation field depends on the position in the  
2761 spacecraft and on time during the mission.

2762 (208) The radiation field near planetary surfaces is determined by several factors, such as  
2763 the existence and strength of a magnetic field, the thickness and composition of the  
2764 atmosphere and the planetary material near to the surface. Important are the scattering,  
2765 absorption and reactions in the planetary atmosphere and in the ground material.

2766

### 2767 **5.1 General**

2768

2769 (209) The physical description of the interaction of space radiation with matter requires  
2770 knowledge of the energy and isotopic distribution of primary and secondary charge particles  
2771 and neutrons produced in atomic and nuclear collision processes in the transport of radiation  
2772 through matter. Computer codes describing proton, high-energy and charge (HZE) nuclei,  
2773 and secondary radiation energy distributions and their transport through matter are used for  
2774 shielding design of spacecraft and planetary habitats, and organ exposure assessments. The  
2775 codes need to be benchmarked against space dosimetry results. The broad range of ion types  
2776 and energies of the galactic cosmic radiation and solar particles, and the large number of  
2777 materials of interest in spacecraft structures, planetary atmospheres, and tissues require a  
2778 detailed description of the basic physical processes including the development of reliable  
2779 computer models. Studies of potential risk mitigation including operational, shielding, and  
2780 biomedical approaches must rely on theoretical models in the form of radiation transport  
2781 codes to make projections and to support design studies of such mission.

2782 (210) Dominant physical processes in the penetration of high-energy nuclei through matter  
2783 are energy loss through atomic and molecular collisions and the absorption and particle  
2784 production from nuclear interactions with spacecraft materials and tissue. For heavy ions with

2785 high kinetic energies ( $> 100$  MeV/u), nuclear absorption by fragmentation is the dominant  
 2786 reaction mode (Hufner, 1985, Townsend et al., 1996). The nuclear absorption cross section  
 2787 scales by the nuclear mass number to a power,  $A^{1/3}$  and fragmentation of GCR nuclei is more  
 2788 efficient per unit mass for materials with light constituent atoms. At lower energies ( $<100$   
 2789 MeV/u), elastic scattering, compound nucleus formation or excitations of discrete nuclear  
 2790 levels that decay by gamma emission or particle emission are dominant interaction modes.  
 2791 However, the short-range and large stopping powers of heavy ions reduce the importance of  
 2792 nuclear reactions at lower energies except for neutrons. High-energy protons and neutrons  
 2793 interact through knockout and spallation reactions (Hufner, 1985). Such processes lead to a  
 2794 build-up of light particles ( $Z \leq 2$ ) and the localized production near the primary track of  
 2795 heavy ion target fragments with large values of LET and short ranges (Wilson, *et al.*, 1991,  
 2796 Cucinotta *et al.*, 1996).

2797

## 2798 5.2 Physics of space radiation transport

2799

### 2800 5.2.1 Radiation transport

2801

2802 (211) The description of the passage of high-energy nuclei through matter can be made  
 2803 using the Boltzmann transport equations that treat the atomic and nuclear collisions. The  
 2804 equations may be solved by either numerical and analytic techniques - the straight ahead  
 2805 approximation, or as an alternative, by Monte-Carlo techniques which sample from  
 2806 interaction processes for individual primaries or their secondaries to develop histories of  
 2807 charged particle passage and energy deposition in materials. The Monte Carlo method is a  
 2808 widely used technique in particle physics and often applied in simulating radiation transport  
 2809 through matter and the calculation of dose distributions.

2810 (212) The relevant Boltzmann transport equations are derived on the basis of conservation  
 2811 principles (Wilson *et al.*, 2001) for the fluence rate  $\phi_j(x, \Omega, E)$  of type  $j$  particles as:

$$2812 \quad \Omega \cdot \nabla \phi_j(x, \Omega, E) = \sum_k \iint \sigma_{jk}(\Omega, \Omega', E, E') \phi_k(x, \Omega', E') dE' d\Omega' - \sigma_j(E) \phi_j(x, \Omega, E) \quad (5.1)$$

2813 where  $\sigma_j(E)$  and  $\sigma_{jk}(\Omega, \Omega', E, E')$  are the media macroscopic cross sections. The  $\sigma_{jk}(\Omega, \Omega', E, E')$   
 2814 represent all those processes by which the particles of type  $k$  moving in direction  $\Omega'$  with  
 2815 energy  $E'$  produce a particle of type  $j$  in direction  $\Omega$  with energy  $E$ . The fluence rate  
 2816  $\phi_j(x, \Omega, E)$  is the main physical quantity used to determine the physical or biological response  
 2817 by folding it with an appropriate response function for the physical or biological system  
 2818 under study.

2819 (213) There may be several reactions, which produce a particular product, and the  
 2820 appropriate cross sections for Equation (5.1) are the inclusive ones. The total cross section  
 2821  $\sigma_j(E)$  with the medium for each particle type of energy  $E$  may be expanded as:

$$2822 \quad \sigma_j(E) = \sigma_j^{\text{at}}(E) + \sigma_j^{\text{el}}(E) + \sigma_j^{\text{f}}(E), \quad (5.2)$$

2823 where the first term refers to collision with atomic electrons, the second term is for elastic  
 2824 nuclear scattering, and the third term describes nuclear reactions. The microscopic cross  
 2825 sections and average energy transfer are ordered as follows:

$$2826 \quad \sigma_j^{\text{at}}(E) \sim 10^{-16} \text{ cm}^2 \quad \text{with } \delta E_{\text{at}} \sim 10^2 \text{ eV} \quad (5.3)$$

$$2827 \quad \sigma_j^{\text{el}}(E) \sim 10^{-19} \text{ cm}^2 \quad \text{with } \delta E_{\text{el}} \sim 10^6 \text{ eV} \quad (5.4)$$

$$2828 \quad \sigma_j^{\text{f}}(E) \sim 10^{-24} \text{ cm}^2 \quad \text{with } \delta E_{\text{r}} \sim 10^8 \text{ eV} . \quad (5.5)$$

2829 Over a distance of  $1 \text{ g cm}^{-2}$  of a material many atomic collisions ( $\sim 10^6$ ) occur, many less  
 2830 nuclear coulomb elastic collisions ( $\sim 10^3$ ), while nuclear reactions are separated by up to  
 2831 many cm depending on energy and particle type. For neutrons, it is  $\sigma_n^{el}(E) \sim 0$  and the  
 2832 nuclear elastic process appears as the first-order perturbation. Mean free paths for elastic  
 2833 scattering of neutrons may become quite small, especially at low energies in the resonance  
 2834 region (ICRU, 2000).

2835 (214) The solution of Equation (5.1) involves hundreds of multi-dimensional integro-  
 2836 differential equations which are coupled together by thousands of cross terms and must be  
 2837 solved self-consistently subject to boundary conditions that ultimately relate to the external  
 2838 environment and the geometry of the astronaut's body and/or a complex spacecraft. A series  
 2839 of approximate solutions can be studied and indicates a high level of accuracy for most  
 2840 applications (Wilson *et al.*, 2001, Tweed *et al.*, 2005). The mean energy loss can be  
 2841 introduced in a continuous slowing down approximation (csda), and straggling neglected for  
 2842 the broad energy spectra of the space radiation. The highly directional coulomb cross section  
 2843 for charged ions (Wong *et al.*, 1990) and nuclear elastic scattering for neutrons generally  
 2844 dominate the second perturbation term. The angular dispersion and its effects on lateral beam  
 2845 spread and range straggling are important corrections in comparing to laboratory  
 2846 measurements. The nuclear elastic scattering is especially important to neutron fields and has  
 2847 been treated using Monte Carlo or multi-group methods (Hughes, *et al.*, 1997). The third  
 2848 perturbation term consists of complex energy and angle functions. Results from Monte Carlo  
 2849 codes (Allsmiller *et al.*, 1965) provided the basis for the generation of analytical techniques  
 2850 and the simplification of boundary conditions used in space shield code development (Wilson  
 2851 *et al.*, 1991).

2852

### 2853 5.2.2 Atomic processes.

2854

2855 (215) The transport coefficients describe the atomic/molecular and nuclear processes by  
 2856 which the particle fields are modified by the presence of material (Wilson *et al.*, 2001). As  
 2857 such, basic atomic and nuclear theories provide the input to the transport code databases. The  
 2858 first order physical perturbation on the right side of Equation (5.1) is the atomic/molecular  
 2859 cross sections as noted in Equation (5.3) for which those terms in Equation (5.1) are  
 2860 expanded about the energy moments  $l$  as

2861 
$$S_n(E) = \sum_i \sum_l \epsilon_i^n \sigma_i(E) \text{ ,} \quad (5.6)$$

2862 where  $\epsilon_i$  is based on the electronic excitation energy, and  $\sigma_i(E)$  is the total atomic/molecular  
 2863 cross section for delivering  $\epsilon_i$  energy to the orbital electrons (including discrete and  
 2864 continuum levels). The first moment ( $n=1$ ) is the usual stopping power, and the usual  
 2865 continuous slowing down approximation (csda) is achieved by neglecting the higher-energy  
 2866 moments. The second moment represents the energy straggling (Payne, 1969) due to the  
 2867 stochastic distribution of energy loss.

2868 (216) Stopping power data bases are derived semi-empirically as the Bethe reduction of  
 2869 Equation (6) in terms of mean excitation energies and shell corrections (Fano, 1963, Wilson  
 2870 *et al.*, 1991). The stopping power,  $S$ , is adequately described by the Bethe-Bloch formula for  
 2871 most ion energies (Bichsel, 1992):

2872 
$$S = \frac{4\pi Z_p^2 Z_T N_T e^4}{mv^2} \left\{ \ln\left(\frac{2mc^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2}{I}\right) - \beta^2 - \frac{C(\beta)}{Z_T} + Z_p L_1(\beta) + Z_p^2 L_2(\beta) + L_3(\beta) \right\} \quad (5.7)$$

2873 where  $e$  is the electronic charge,  $N_T$  is the density of target atoms,  $m$  is the mass of the  
 2874 electron,  $c$  is the speed of light,  $\beta=v/c$ , and  $I$  is the mean excitation energy. In Equation (5.7),  
 2875 the various terms are the shell correction  $C(\beta)$ , Barkas correction,  $L_1(\beta)$ , Bloch term,  $L_2(\beta)$ ,  
 2876 and Mott and density corrections  $L_1(\beta)$ . The range of the ion is evaluated from the stopping  
 2877 power as

2878 
$$R(E) = \int_0^E \frac{dE'}{S(E')} \quad (5.8)$$

2879 (217) The second energy moment is related to energy or range straggling and provides  
 2880 corrections to the ion slowing down spectrum (Fano, 1963, Payne, 1969). For broad-energy  
 2881 beams conditions of GCR or SPEs transport straggling effects are negligible, however they  
 2882 are important for laboratory studies with mono-energetic beams and for understanding  
 2883 radiation detector response. The next physical perturbation term is the Coulomb scattering by  
 2884 the atomic nucleus and is typically represented by Rutherford scattering modified by  
 2885 screening of the nuclear charge by the orbital electrons using the Thomas-Fermi distribution  
 2886 for the atomic orbits. The total nuclear Coulomb cross section found by integrating over the  
 2887 scattering directions is related to the radiation length. The differential cross section is highly  
 2888 peaked in the forward direction, and only after many scatterings is significant beam  
 2889 divergence seen. Numerical solutions to the Coulomb multiple-scattering problem have been  
 2890 investigated for many years (Fermi, 1940) and accurately describe experimental data with  
 2891 HZE (Wong *et al.*, 1990) or proton beams (Carlsson and Rosander, 1973).

2892  
 2893 **5.2.3 Nuclear interactions**  
 2894

2895 (218) The extent of the nuclear interaction cross section database required for the transport  
 2896 of cosmic radiation is for energies from 1 MeV/u to energies of tens of GeV/u, including a  
 2897 large number of projectile and target material combinations. The types of cross sections  
 2898 required for transport involve total yields and multiplicities and inclusive secondary energy  
 2899 spectra, inclusive double differential cross sections in angle and energy. The total absorption  
 2900 plays a critical role in ensuring a reasonable solution to the Boltzmann equation including the  
 2901 accuracy of particle conservation as a function of depth in the shield (Wilson *et al.*, 1991).  
 2902 Similarly in Monte-Carlo approaches the absorption cross section plays the critical role of  
 2903 determining the probability of interaction events along the trajectory of a primary particle in  
 2904 the shielding. In addition, exclusive cross sections are used in some event generators in  
 2905 Monte-Carlo transport codes. The total cross section  $\sigma_{TOT}$  is found from the elastic amplitude  
 2906 in the forward direction as found in the optical theorem (Wilson *et al.*, 1991) as the imaginary  
 2907 part of the elastic scattering amplitude (Im  $f$ ):

2908 
$$\sigma_{TOT} = \frac{4\pi}{k} \text{Im } f(q=0) \quad (5.9)$$

2909 where  $q$  is the momentum transfer, and  $k$  the relative momentum of projectile and target  
 2910 nuclei.

2911 (219) The total absorption (ABS) cross section is then also found from the elastic  
 2912 scattering amplitude by using:

2913 
$$\sigma_{TOT} = \sigma_{ABS} + \sigma_{EL} \quad (5.10)$$

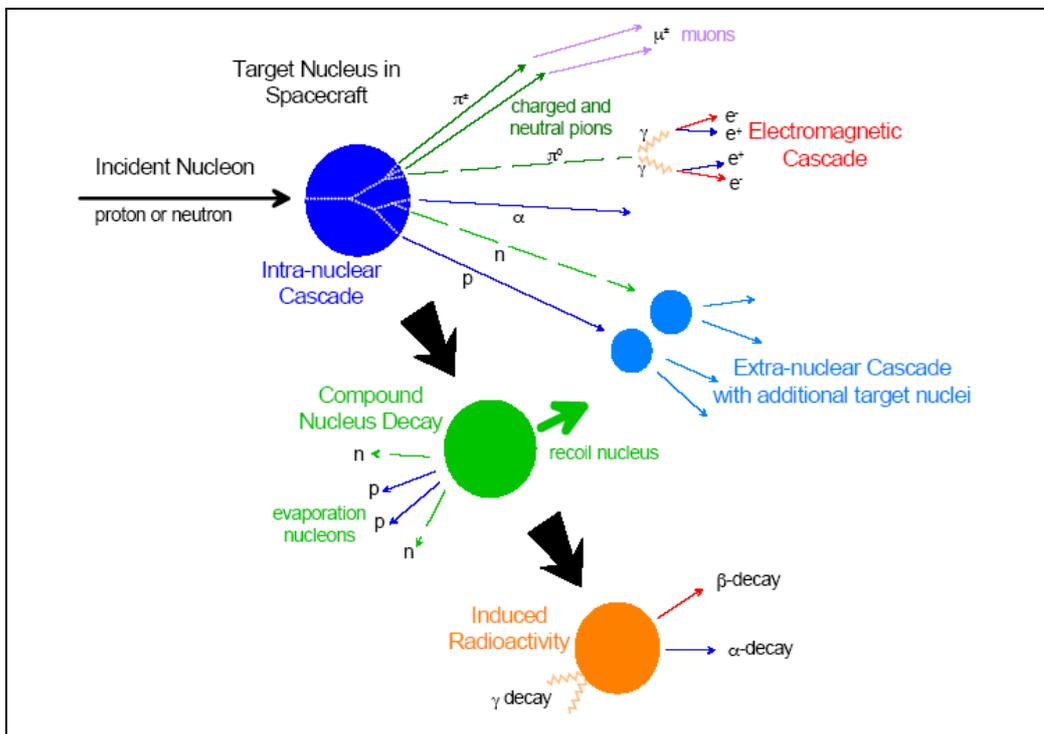
2914 where  $\sigma_{EL}$  is the total elastic cross section. Formula for these cross sections can be derived  
 2915 from microscopic theories of nuclear multiple scattering (Cucinotta *et al.*, 1997). The  
 2916 absorption cross sections are accurately represented by energy dependent variants of the  
 2917 Bradt-Peters equation (Townsend *et al.*, 1986a)

2918 
$$\sigma_{\text{ABS}} = \pi r_0^2 c_1(E)(A_p^{1/3} + A_T^{1/3} - c_2(E))^2 \tag{5.11}$$

2919 where  $r_0$ ,  $c_1(E)$  and  $c_2(E)$  are parameters fit to experimental data. Absorption cross sections  
 2920 have been well studied both experimentally and theoretically and are known with a few  
 2921 percent uncertainties (Tripathi, 2001). The absorption cross section rises at low energy as  
 2922 reaction channels open and reaches a minimum at a few hundred MeV/u before rising again  
 2923 as meson production channels open.

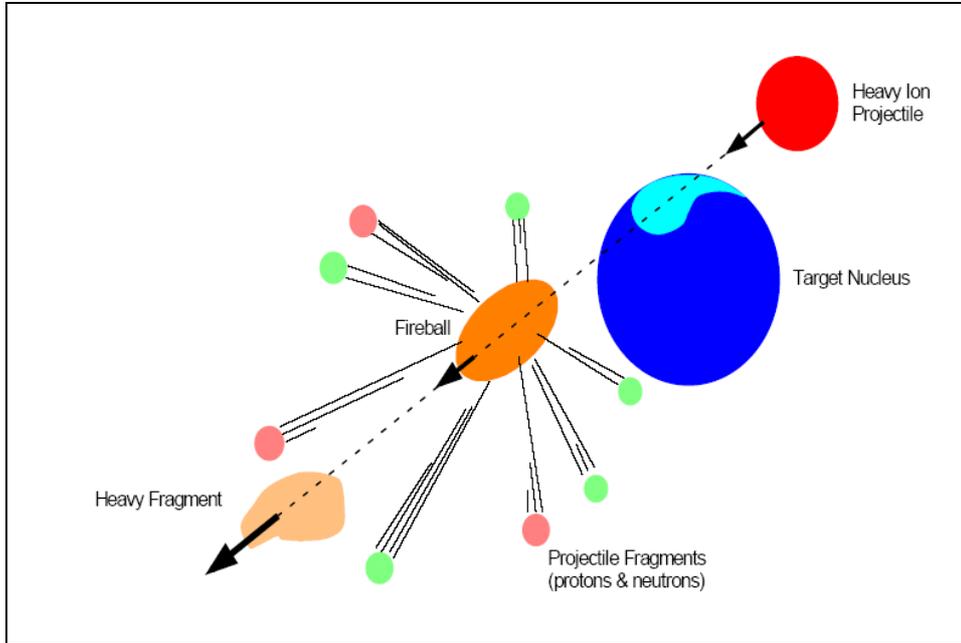
2924 (220) Table 5.1 shows reaction partners and secondaries of relevant reactions broken into  
 2925 distinct reaction types or mechanisms. Low energy evaporation products including heavy ion  
 2926 target fragments are high-LET events important in biological damage. Knockout products  
 2927 from proton or neutron reactions and projectile fragments from nuclei of GCR are typically  
 2928 of low to moderate LET, however, their large ranges leads to radiation build-up through  
 2929 further reactions. The abrasion-ablation models (Hufner *et al.*, 1975, Townsend *et al.*, 1986b,  
 2930 1996, Wilson *et al.*, 1995b, Cucinotta, et al., 1997) are used to describe heavy ion  
 2931 fragmentation cross-sections. The description of nuclear reactions through abrasion (particle  
 2932 removal during ion-ion interaction) and ablation (nuclear de-excitation after the abrasion  
 2933 step) is illustrated in Fig. 5.1, which shows the roles of projectile overlap, fireball formation  
 2934 in central regions, and the decay of the pre-fragment spectators (NCRP, 2006). The  
 2935 individual steps of abrasion and ablation can be described in both semi-classical or quantum  
 2936 mechanical approaches (Cucinotta *et al.*, 1995; 2007). These different reaction processes  
 2937 have been described by quantum multiple scattering theories (QMST), semi-classical  
 2938 methods such as quantum molecular dynamics, or Monte-Carlo approaches to nuclear  
 2939 reactions using an intra-nuclear cascade model (see Durante and Cucinotta, 2011 and  
 2940 references therein for a review of nuclear reaction models).

2941  
 2942  
 2943



2944  
 2945

2946 Fig. 5.1a. Schematic diagram of the reaction of an incident nucleon with a target nucleus at high  
 2947 energies (ICRU, 1978).  
 2948  
 2949



2950  
 2951 Fig. 5.1b. Schematic diagram of a relativistic heavy ion reaction with a target nucleus (Miller, 1997).  
 2952  
 2953

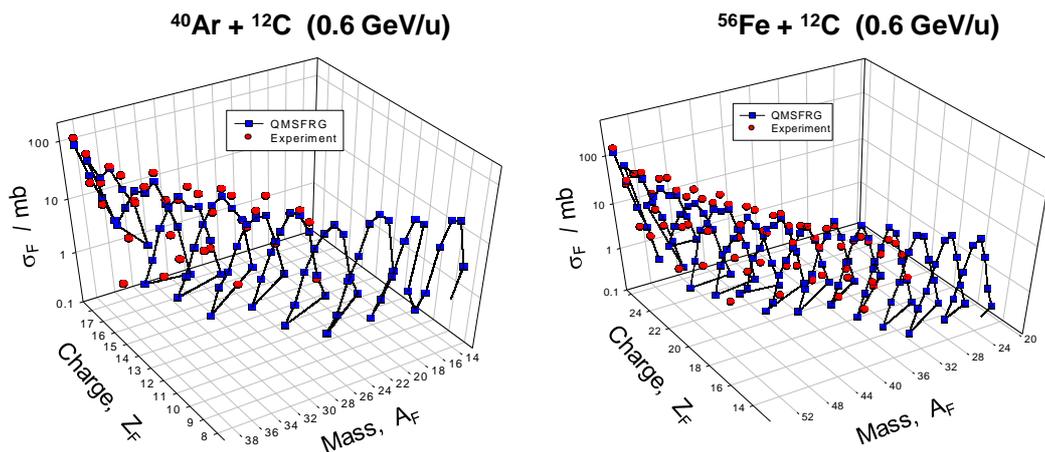
2954  
 2955

Table 5.1. Reaction products in nuclear reactions important to space radiation studies.

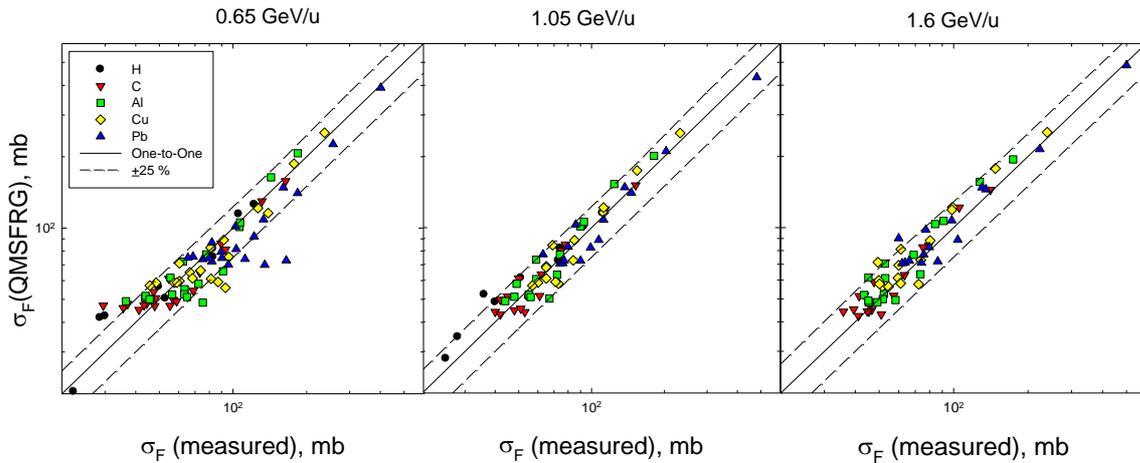
REACTION TYPE	SECONDARY	MECHANISM	COMMENT
Nucleon-Nucleus	Nucleon	Evaporation Knockout and elastic, quasi-elastic scattering	High LET, small range Large range
Nucleon-Nucleus	Light particle (d,t,h, $\alpha$ )	Evaporation Knockout, pickup	High LET, small range Large range
Nucleon-Nucleus	Heavy recoil	Elastic scattering Fragmentation or spallation	High LET, small range High LET, small range
Nucleus-Nucleus	Nucleon or light particle	Target or projectile Knockout or evaporation	Small LET, large range High LET, small range
Nucleus-Nucleus	Heavy ion	Projectile Fragment	Mod. LET, large range
Nucleus-Nucleus	Heavy ion	Target Fragment	High LET, small range
Nucleon or Nucleus-Nucleus	Pion, Kaon, anti- nucleon, gamma	Target reaction Proj. $E > 500$ MeV/u	Deep penetration ( $> 50$ g/cm <sup>2</sup> )

2956  
 2957 (221) Examples of fragmentation cross sections for Ar and Fe projectiles are shown in Fig.

2958 5.2 in comparison to the quantum multiple scattering fragmentation (QMSFRG) model  
 2959 (Cucinotta, et al, 2002, 2006b, and 2007). Available fragmentation cross section data sets for  
 2960 target atoms of interest for space missions were reviewed by Durante and Cucinotta (2011)  
 2961 and NCRP (2006). One feature of the elemental distribution of the fragments is the strong  
 2962 even-odd effect in the charge number of the fragments observed. The effect appears to be  
 2963 largest for intermediate mass projectiles ( $A=20$  to  $40$ ) and depends on the isospin of the  
 2964 projectile (Knott et al., 1996, 1997). Theoretical models provide a good representation of the  
 2965 odd-even effect if accurate nuclear de-excitation models are used (Cucinotta *et al.*, 2002,  
 2966 2006b, 2007). Figure 5.2 shows comparisons of fragmentation production cross sections of  
 2967 the QMSFRG model with experiments for several beam energies of  $^{56}\text{Fe}$  interacting with a  
 2968 variety of target nuclei. Good agreement between experiments and the QMSFRG model  
 2969 within 25% for most fragment cross sections has been achieved as shown in Fig. 5.3. A larger  
 2970 data base for cross sections for proton and neutron induced reactions now exists with recent  
 2971 surveys of such data provided in ICRU Report 63 (ICRU, 2000). Above kinetics energies of a  
 2972 few 1000 MeV/u, multiple meson production processes are dominant and reactions models  
 2973 based on patron or quark-gluon models can be used to describe nuclear interaction cross  
 2974 sections (Fasso *et al.*, 2005).



2975 Fig. 5.2. Comparisons of the QMSFRG model (Cucinotta *et al.*, 2006b) to experiment for isotopic  
 2976 distribution of fragments for  $^{40}\text{Ar}$  on  $^{12}\text{C}$  at 0.6 GeV/u (left panel) and  $^{56}\text{Fe}$  on  $^{12}\text{C}$  interactions at 0.6  
 2977 GeV/u (right panel).  
 2978  
 2979



2980

2981 Fig. 5.3. Comparisons between experiments and the QMSFRG model for fragmentation cross  
 2982 sections for <sup>56</sup>Fe projectiles of different energies interacting with several target nuclei (Cucinotta et  
 2983 al., 2006b) where the dashed lines show ±25 % ranges of the experimental data.

2984

2985 (222) The momentum distribution of heavy projectile fragments is forward peaked and  
 2986 described as a Gaussian distribution in the projectile rest frame with a small downshift in the  
 2987 average momentum from the projectiles velocity. The longitudinal momentum width,  $\sigma_L$ , is  
 2988 well described by (Goldhaber, 1974):

2989

$$\sigma_L = \sigma_0 \left[ \frac{n(A_p - n)}{A_p - 1} \right]^{1/2} \quad (5.13)$$

2990 where  $n$  is the number of nucleons removed from the projectile and  $\sigma_0$  is approximately  
 2991 related to the Fermi-momentum of the projectile,  $p_F$ , by  $\sigma_0 = p_F/\sqrt{5}$ . The transverse width is  
 2992 approximately the same as the longitudinal for heavier fragments. A small momentum  
 2993 downshift of the fragments relative to the projectile also occurs and is dependent on the  
 2994 fragment mass (Tull, 1990). Transformation of the Gaussian distribution to the laboratory rest  
 2995 frame reveals a narrow angular distribution for the projectile fragments that are strictly  
 2996 forward peaked in a narrow cone ( $<5^\circ$ ), which leads to the success of the straight-ahead  
 2997 approximation in transport models. For lighter fragments the longitudinal and transverse widths  
 2998 diverge and the Gaussian model breaks down. This is due to the multiple sources for light  
 2999 particle production including projectile abrasion, projectile ablation, target abrasion, and  
 3000 target ablation, as well as a possible intermediate source due to the formation of an  
 3001 intermediate rapidity fireball in central collisions.

3002

### 3003 5.3 Proton, neutron and heavy ion transport codes

3004

3005 (223) Several radiation transport codes have been developed for applications in  
 3006 radiotherapy, physical experiments at high-energy accelerators, detector simulations, and  
 3007 radiation protection in space. The different radiation transport codes utilize distinct nuclear  
 3008 data bases and methods including their treatment of nuclear interactions, secondary radiation,  
 3009 and shielding geometries. It is unlikely that space radiation problems can be handled with a  
 3010 one-size fits all approach and the specific application will drive the method to be used.  
 3011 Complex spacecraft and organ geometry are described using ray-tracing distributions,  
 3012 combinatorial geometry models of complex structures, or voxel based methods. Ray tracing  
 3013 methods are able to treat thousands of spacecraft parts accurately and can directly integrate

3014 engineering designs in a CAD format. Ray tracing methods have only been developed for bi-  
3015 directional (forward-backward scattering); however they have been shown to be quite  
3016 accurate for the omni-directional radiation fields in space. Combinatorial geometry models,  
3017 often used by Monte-Carlo codes, rely on approximations that paradoxically wash out the  
3018 fine details of surface and angular effects that 3D-transport models are intended to describe.

3019 (224) Models of the GCR, trapped radiation or SPE's are usually used as the boundary  
3020 condition for transport codes. Several transport codes used in space applications are briefly  
3021 summarized here:

3022

3023 **FLUKA** (FLUctuating KAscades)

3024 (225) FLUKA is a general purpose Monte Carlo program for calculations of particle and  
3025 photon transport (Fassò et al., 2005; Battistoni et al., 2006) which can simulate the  
3026 interactions and propagation in matter of approximately 60 different particles, including  
3027 heavy ions (<http://www.fluka.org>). The program can also describe the transport of polarised  
3028 photons (e.g., synchrotron radiation) and optical photons. Photonuclear interactions can be  
3029 simulated. Time evolution of the radioactive nuclei inventory and tracking of emitted  
3030 radiation from unstable residual nuclei can be performed.

3031 (226) Depending on the energies of the primary particles, hadronic interactions are  
3032 simulated by different physical models. For higher energies, the Dual Parton Model is used.  
3033 Below 3-5 GeV/c the PEANUT package includes a very detailed Generalised Intra-Nuclear  
3034 Cascade (GINC) and a pre-equilibrium stage, while at high energies the Gribov-Glauber  
3035 multiple collision mechanism is included in a less refined GINC. Nuclear interactions  
3036 generated by ions are treated through interfaces to external event generators, except for the  
3037 low energy (less than 150 MeV/u) range, for which a model based on the Boltzmann Master  
3038 Equation (BME) has been implemented. The RQMD (Relativistic Quantum Molecular  
3039 Dynamics) generator is invoked from 100 MeV/u to 5 GeV/u, and the DPMJET code is used  
3040 for energies over 5 GeV/u.

3041 (227) The transport of charged particles is described by applying a multiple scattering  
3042 algorithm based on Moliere's theory of Coulomb scattering. The algorithm includes an  
3043 accurate treatment of curved trajectories in magnetic fields. The energy loss is determined  
3044 according to the Bethe-Bloch theory and from bremsstrahlung and pair production. Ionisation  
3045 fluctuations are accounted for.

3046 (228) For neutrons with energies lower than 20 MeV, FLUKA employs a multi-group  
3047 transport algorithm, which uses a subdivision of the neutron energy range in 260 groups and  
3048 is based on neutron cross section libraries containing more than 200 different materials,  
3049 selected for their use in physics, dosimetry and accelerator engineering. Energy depositions  
3050 for nuclei other than hydrogen are calculated by kerma coefficients.

3051 (229) FLUKA can handle very complex geometries, using an improved version of the  
3052 well-known Combinatorial Geometry (CG) package. Repetitive structures (lattices) and voxel  
3053 geometries can be handled. Various visualisation and debugging tools are also available.

3054

3055 **GEANT4**

3056 (230) The Monte-Carlo code Geant4 (Agostinelli, 2003 and Allison, 2006) states for  
3057 GEometry ANd Tracking and is a software toolkit for simulating the passage of particles  
3058 through matter. It has been developed and maintained by the Geant4 Collaboration which is a  
3059 worldwide teamwork of physicists and software engineers (see:  
3060 <http://geant4.web.cern.ch/geant4>). Geant4 and its predecessors were designed to utilise the

3061 physics models, to handle complex geometries, and to enable its easy adaptation for optimal  
3062 use in different sets of tasks. It has its applications in high energy, nuclear and accelerator  
3063 physics as well as studies in radiation protection, medical and space science.

3064 (231) The toolkit includes facilities for handling tracking, geometry, physics models,  
3065 detector response, run management, visualisation and user interface. The software offers a  
3066 large set of physical processes (e.g. electromagnetic, hadronic and optical model), different  
3067 type of particles (leptons, bosons, mesons, baryons, etc) and databases with properties of  
3068 matter and elements. Physics processes cover a wide range of energies which spans from 250  
3069 eV up to TeV depending on the case. Several of the modules contained in Geant4 are re-  
3070 creations of physics in other codes including e. g. HZETRN, HETC. Spacecraft geometry  
3071 models are available including multi-layered shielding simulation Software (MULASSIS)  
3072 (Bernabeu and Casanova, 2007).

3073 (232) The toolkit is implemented in C++ programming language making use of object  
3074 oriented technique. This approach allows users effectively to manage complexity and limit  
3075 dependencies by defining a uniform interfaces and common organisational principles in order  
3076 to create an application for solving a specific problem.

3077

3078 **HETC-HEDS** (High Energy Transport Code-Human Exploration)

3079 (233) HETC is a high energy Monte Carlo radiation transport code and was developed at  
3080 Oak Ridge National Laboratory (Townsend et al., 2002). The code was originally developed  
3081 for transport calculations with incident high-energy protons, neutrons,  $\pi^+$ ,  $\pi^-$ ,  $\pi^+$  or  $\pi^-$  only.  
3082 Lateron Townsend et al. (Townsend et al., 2005) have extended the model especially for  
3083 space radiation shielding applications. The code, now called HETC-HEDS, has been  
3084 modified to include the transport of heavier nuclei (Charara et al., 2008).

3085 (234) HETC-HEDS includes nucleus-nucleus cross sections, range-energy tables scaled  
3086 from the proton data, and a nuclear collision module for heavy ion interactions. Nonelastic  
3087 nucleon collisions and charged-pion collisions with hydrogen at energies above 3.5 GeV and  
3088 2.5 GeV, respectively, are treated by using calculational methods that utilize experimental  
3089 data for the total non-elastic n-p, p-p,  $\pi^+$ -p and  $\pi^-$ -p cross sections and analytic fits to  
3090 experimental data. The intra-nuclear-cascade evaporation concept of particle-nucleus  
3091 interaction is used to determine the effect of particle-nucleus collisions below 3.5 GeV for  
3092 nucleons and 2.5 GeV for charged pions. Following the intranuclear-cascade, the excitation  
3093 energy left in the nucleus is treated using an evaporation model. The particles allowed during  
3094 evaporation include protons, neutrons, d,  $^3\text{H}$ ,  $^3\text{He}$ , and  $^4\text{He}$ .

3095 (235) HETC-HEDS used the combinatorial geometry package so virtually arbitrary  
3096 geometries are allowed. Each particle in the cascade is followed until it eventually disappears  
3097 by escaping from the geometric boundaries of the system, undergoes nuclear collision or  
3098 absorption, comes to rest due to energy losses from ionisation and excitation of atomic  
3099 electrons, or decays in the case of pions and muons.

3100

3101 **HZETRN** (High charge (Z) and Energy Transport code)

3102 (236) HZETRN was developed by Wilson et al. (1991, 2004) at NASA. It solves the  
3103 Boltzmann equation using numerical methods. The early version used the straight-ahead  
3104 approximation but more recent versions use bi-directional transport or 3D transport for  
3105 laboratory studies (Wilson, et al., 2009). Recently ray tracing representations of voxel models  
3106 of human geometries have been developed (Slaba et al., 2009). Nuclear interactions are  
3107 treated by the NUCFRG2 Model (Wilson et al., 1994a) or QMSFRG model (Cucinotta *et al.*,

3108 2007) with proton and neutron cross sections described by the Bertini and Ranft models. To  
3109 treat complex radiation geometries ray tracing methods are utilized, which is powerful  
3110 because spacecraft engineers can utilize their designs directly in the transport code  
3111 evaluations. Computer runs on small computer workstations can be performed in less than  
3112 one hour for complex spacecraft geometries with multi-layer materials and deep shielding  
3113 conditions ( $>100 \text{ g/cm}^2$ ) combined with models of the organ shielding of the human body.

3114  
3115 **MCNPX** (Monte-Carlo N-Particle eXtended)

3116 (237) The Los Alamos Monte-Carlo code MCNPX (see: <http://mcnpx.lanl.gov>) and its  
3117 predecessors are very widely distributed (Waters, 2002; Pelowitz, 2008). The code is capable  
3118 of tracking many particle types (nucleons and light ions) and over 2000 heavy ions up to very  
3119 high energies. It uses standard evaluated data libraries for neutrons, photons, electrons,  
3120 protons and photonuclear interactions and uses physics models for other particle types and at  
3121 energies for which tabular data are not available.

3122 (238) Current physics modules include the Bertini and Isabel models taken from the  
3123 LAHET Code system, CEM 03, and INCL4 (James et al., 2009). The incorporation of a  
3124 heavy ion physics model has enabled the transport of recoil nuclei. This model automatically  
3125 transports all residuals that are produced from any reaction even if the source particle is not a  
3126 heavy ion. Current stopping powers for heavy ions have been adjusted in an *ad hoc* fashion  
3127 (Pelowitz, 2008) so that they better match SRIM results (Ziegler et al., 2008). Charged  
3128 particles are slowed down to a lower total energy limit of 5 MeV, at which point their  
3129 remaining energy is locally deposited.

3130  
3131 **PHITS** (Particle and Heavy-Ion Transport code System)

3132 (239) The Monte-Carlo radiation transport code PHITS (see: <http://phits.jaea.go.jp>) was  
3133 developed under collaboration with several institutes including JAEA, RIST, KEK and  
3134 Chalmers University of Technology (Niita et al., 2010; Sihver et al., 2010a). Nuclear  
3135 interactions are described by various models such as JAM and JQMD up to 100 GeV/u. The  
3136 code can determine the energy of charged particles emitted from low-energy neutron-induced  
3137 nuclear reactions, using the event generator mode (Iwamoto et al., 2007, Niita et al., 2007) in  
3138 combination with nuclear data libraries. This feature enables the direct calculation of dose  
3139 equivalent in organs or tissues which cannot be calculated by employing the conventional  
3140 kerma approximation. The accuracy of the code for use in space dosimetry was well verified  
3141 by calculating neutron spectra inside Space Shuttle (Sato et al., 2006) and doses inside  
3142 anthropomorphic phantoms (Sato et al., 2011), using simplified geometries of spacecraft. The  
3143 code is also used for the computational analyses of the MATROSHKA and MATROSHKA-  
3144 R experiments in space (Sihver et al., 2010b and Koliskova et al., 2012).

3145  
3146 **5.3.1 Inter-comparison and validation of radiation transport codes**  
3147

3148 (240) An assessment of the accuracy of space radiation transport models for prediction of  
3149 energy spectra of charged particles and neutrons after primary radiation has passed matter can  
3150 be made by comparisons to laboratory experiments with proton and heavy ion beams or from  
3151 measurements in spacecraft. Spaceflight measurements, however, involve many factors such  
3152 that potential inadequacies in radiation transport models are difficult to isolate relative to  
3153 possible inaccuracies in environmental or shielding models. Also, space validation is limited  
3154 by the access to space and current spacecraft materials, and may not be representative of

3155 model predictions for other material types such as those that occur on planetary surfaces or in  
3156 advanced materials selection concepts. In this respect, laboratory validation is advantageous  
3157 to validate radiation transport computer codes and associated data base models and to provide  
3158 tests for studying material properties for reducing biological doses (Schimmerling *et al.*,  
3159 1999). Nevertheless, spaceflight measurements provide important tests of predictive  
3160 capability of several factors and are needed for final validation of transport codes.

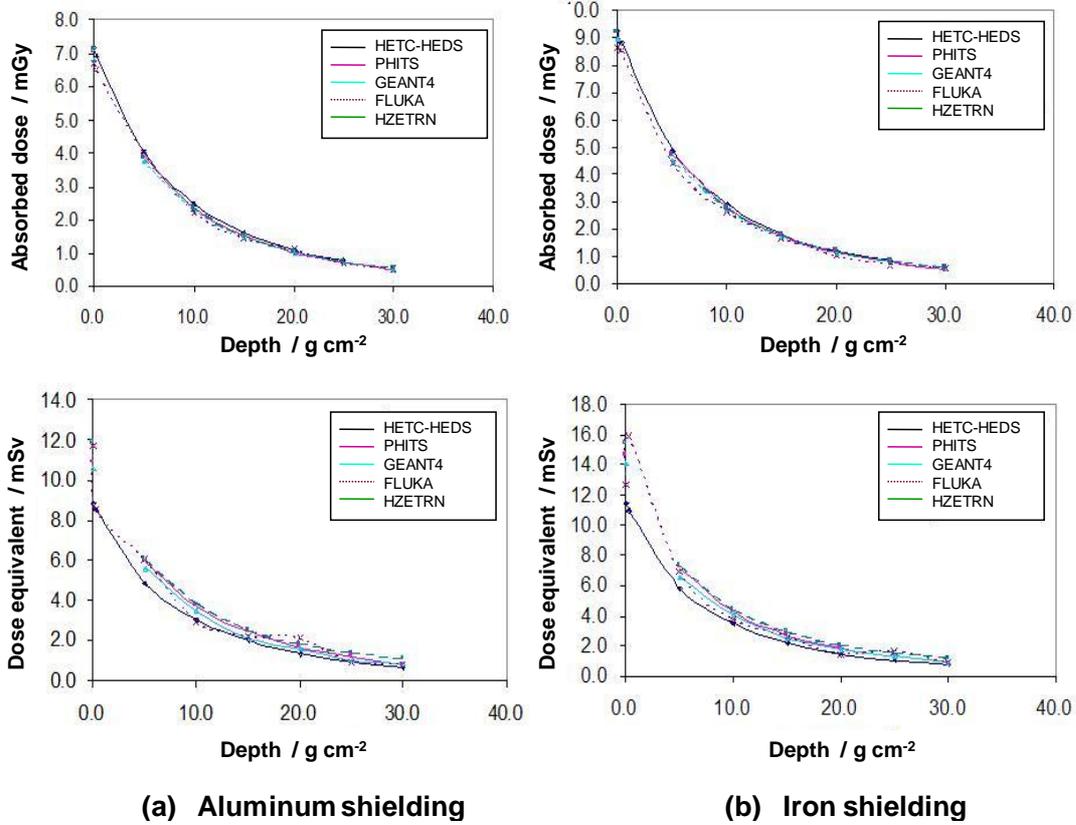
3161 (241) Recently an extensive benchmarking of the calculated projectile fragmentation  
3162 cross-sections from the reactions of 300 - 1000 MeV/u Si-28, Ar-40, and Fe-56 ions on  
3163 polyethylene, carbon, aluminum, and copper targets (relevant to space radiation protection)  
3164 has been carried out using PHITS, FLUKA, HETC-HEDS, and MCNPX. Calculated results  
3165 were compared with measurements (Sihver *et al.*, 2008).

3166 (242) An over-all “reasonable” agreement between calculations and measurements was  
3167 found. However, a general trend of a slight underestimation of the calculated fragment  
3168 production cross-sections (partial charge-changing cross-sections) has been observed. The  
3169 code HETC-HEDS seems to underestimate these cross-sections more than the other codes  
3170 included in this benchmarking. PHITS also seems to underestimate the total charge-changing  
3171 cross-sections, which is in agreement with other observations (Sihver *et al.*, 2007).

3172 (243) A recent inter-comparison of transport codes for SPE and GCR test cases indicates  
3173 fairly good agreement between the various codes (Wilson *et al.*, 2009; Heinbockel *et al.*,  
3174 2011). Fig. 5.4 shows comparisons of results of depth-dose distributions from different codes  
3175 for a large SPE. Fig. 5.5 shows a comparison of energy spectra of secondary particles  
3176 produced by protons and Helium ions of GCR at solar minimum calculated with various  
3177 codes.

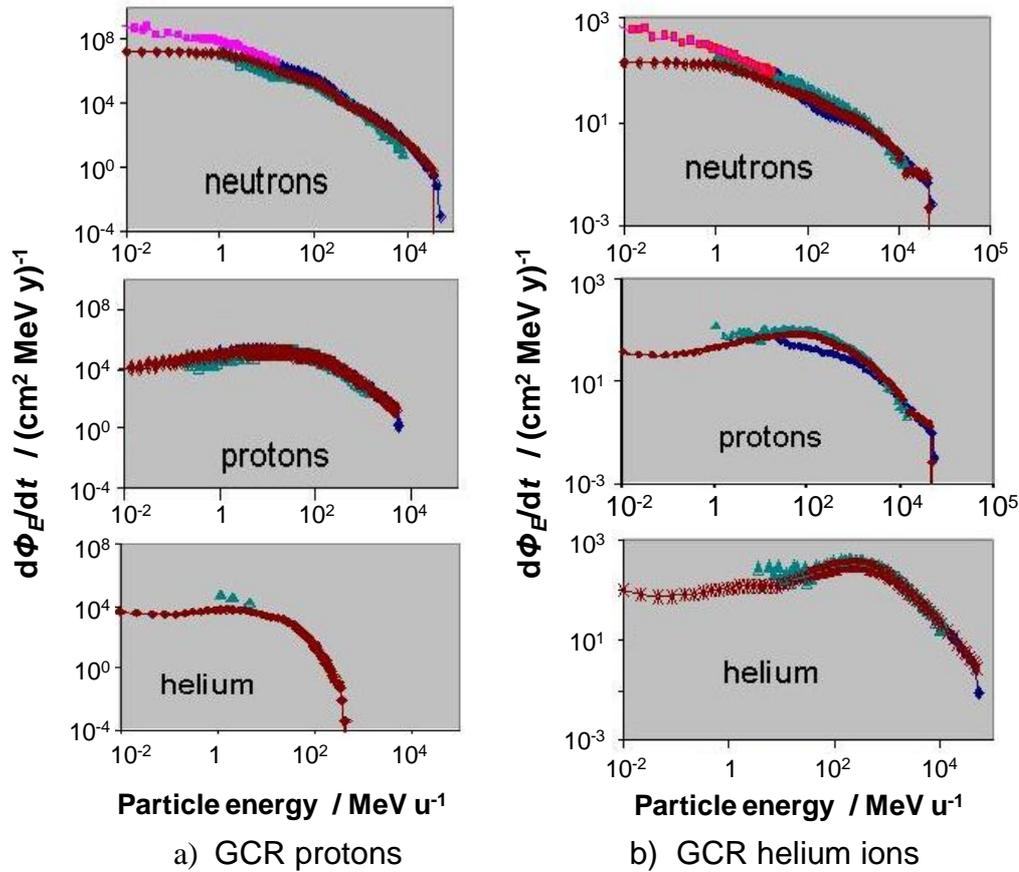
3178

3179



3180  
3181  
3182  
3183  
3184

Fig. 5.4. Inter-comparison of transport codes for depth-dose distributions of absorbed dose and dose equivalent from solar particle events in aluminum and iron shielding (Wilson et al., 2009).



3185  
3186  
3187  
3188  
3189  
3190  
3191

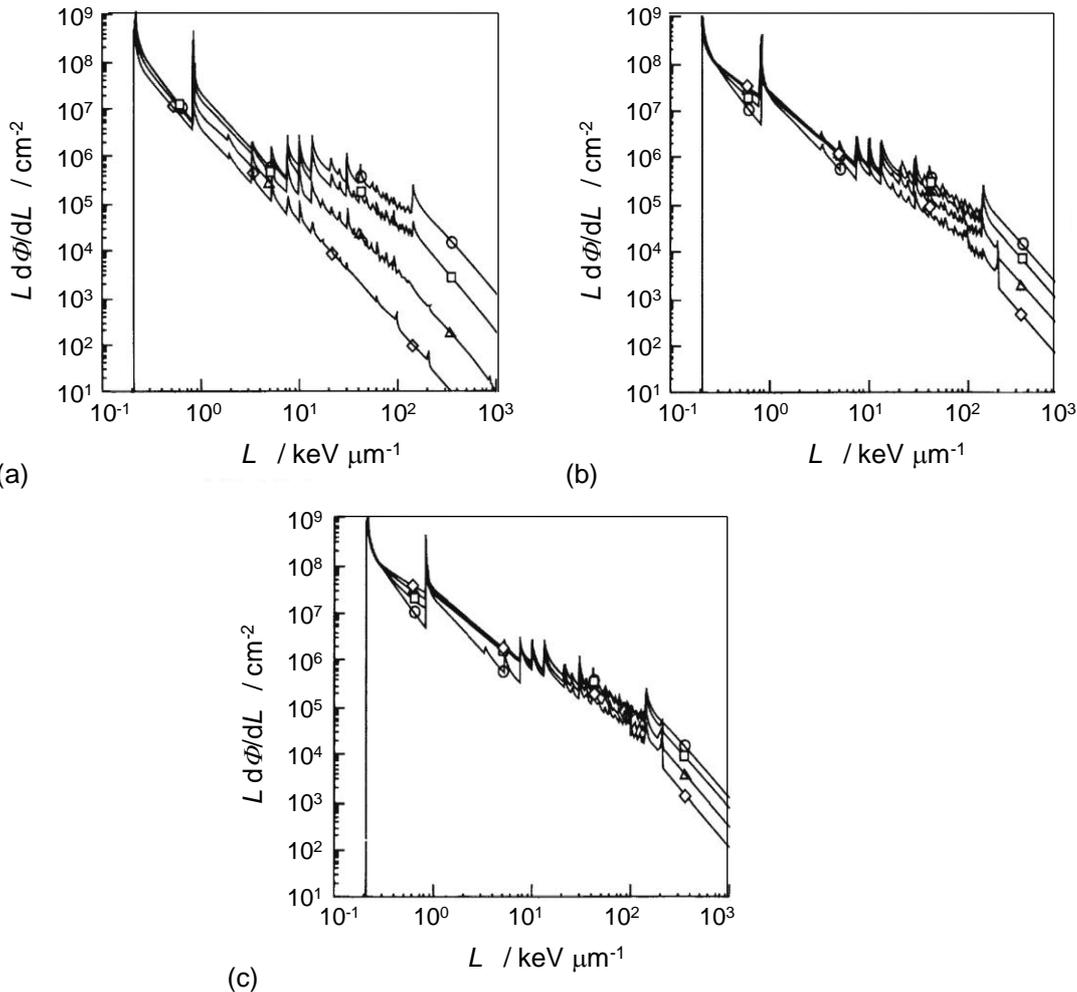
Fig. 5.5. Inter-comparison of energy spectra (spectral fluence rate,  $d\Phi_E/dt$ ) of light ions from GCR at solar minima calculated by different transport codes (Wilson et al, 2009).

◆ HETC-HEDS, ▲ Fluka, ◆, \* HZETAN2006

#### 5.4 Radiation Fields inside spacecraft

3192  
3193  
3194  
3195  
3196  
3197  
3198  
3199  
3200  
3201  
3202  
3203  
3204  
3205  
3206

(244) Radiation fields inside spacecraft are determined by the external radiation incident on the spacecraft and the secondary radiation produced by the interactions with the walls and the equipment inside and outside the spacecraft. The internal radiation field varies with time due to the variation of the external radiation (see Chapter 2) and with the location in the spacecraft due to the specific arrangement of the equipment and the shielding properties of the different walls and spacecraft components. Important effects are absorption, scattering, and degradation of the primary radiation, and production of secondary radiation. Hence the radiation field inside a spacecraft –and also in the outer region near to the spacecraft – includes projectile and target fragment, neutrons, photons, pions and muons in addition to the radiation components of the primary field. Assessment of the inner radiation field and its components can be performed either by measurements or by simulations using environmental models and radiation transport codes.



3207

3208

3209

3210

3211

3212

3213

3214

3215

3216

3217

3218

3219

3220

3221

3222

3223

3224

3225

3226

3227

3228

Fig. 5.6. LET distribution of particle fluence in space calculated using the HZETRN code for increasing amounts of liquid hydrogen, water, and aluminum shielding (Wilson et al., 1995c).

○ without shielding; with shielding thickness of □ 5 g cm<sup>-2</sup>, Δ 15 g cm<sup>-2</sup>, ◇ 30 g cm<sup>-2</sup>.

(245) The exterior environment is modified by the types and amounts of radiation shielding. The LET distributions of particle fluence for increasing amounts of liquid hydrogen, water or aluminum shielding are shown in Fig. 5.6. The higher fluence at large values of LET (>50 keV/μm) for aluminum compared to the other materials is due to the contributions of secondary neutrons and charged particles produced in the shielding, which is reduced for materials containing hydrogen.

(246) The measurements on NASA space shuttle (STS) flights over many years and on the Russian space station MIR have allowed for a large number of comparisons of radiation transport calculations to flight measurements (Cucinotta et al., 2000b). Passive measurements with nuclear etched track detectors (PADC) have limitations at both low LET (< 5 keV/μm) tracks and short-tracks from target fragments or stopping GCR ions of high-LET tracks. The use of active dosimeters on STS flights has allowed for separation of GCR contributions from that of trapped protons which is not possible with passive dosimetry (Badhwar and Cucinotta, 2000). Active detector measurements include tissue equivalent proportional counters, charged particle telescopes (Badhwar et al., 1995), and active Bonner spheres embedded with proportional counters (Koshiishi et al., 2007).

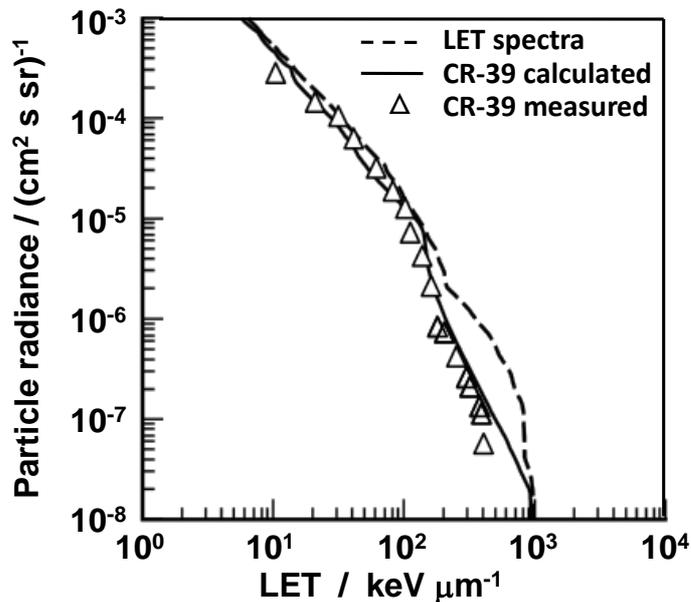


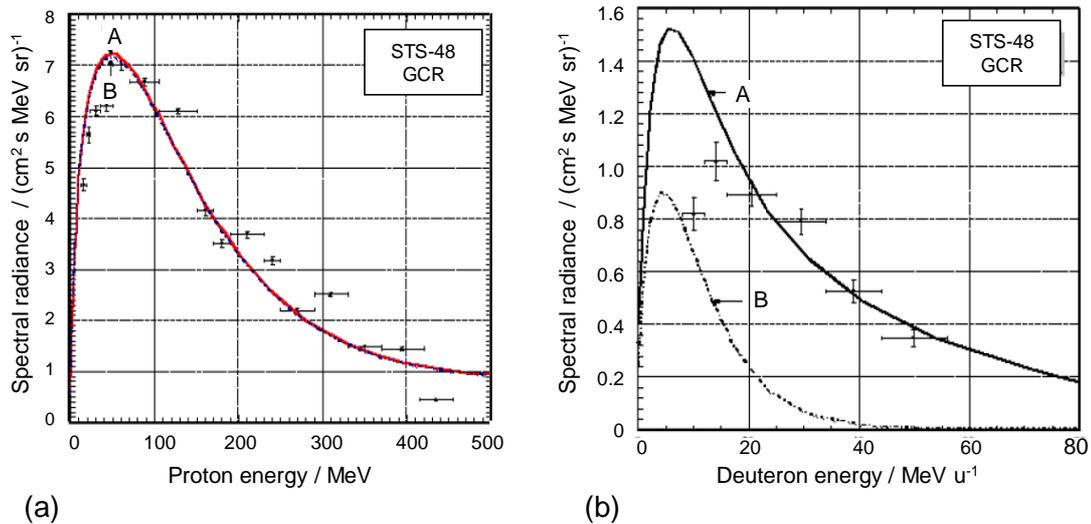
Fig. 5.7. Comparisons of LET distributions of particle radiance measured by nuclear etched track detectors (CR-39) to LET distributions and model calculations of LET distributions on Space shuttle mission (Wilson et al., 1994b, Shinn et al., 1998).

3229  
3230  
3231  
3232  
3233  
3234  
3235  
3236  
3237  
3238  
3239  
3240  
3241  
3242  
3243  
3244  
3245  
3246  
3247  
3248  
3249  
3250  
3251  
3252  
3253  
3254  
3255  
3256  
3257  
3258  
3259

(247) Measurements on STS flights were performed by Badhwar et al. (2000) using a cylindrical tissue equivalent proportional counter (TEPC) with a length-to-diameter ratio of 1 simulating a 2  $\mu\text{m}$  diameter site and covering a lineal energy range of 0.25 keV/ $\mu\text{m}$  to 1250 keV/ $\mu\text{m}$ . TEPC measurements on several missions in space have been compared to calculations using HZETRN for total dose and dose equivalent. The comparisons use the free space GCR model of Badhwar and O'Neill (1992) and representations of the STS or Mir shielding distribution around the detectors. The difference is found to be less than 15% for the majority of the comparisons. A comparison of LET distributions measured by PADC and calculated using the HZETRN code is shown in Fig. 5.7. They show a good agreement when the response of the PADC to short tracks is additionally considered (Wilson, et al., 1994b, Shinn et al., 1998).

(248) Particle energy distributions measured on STS-48 are shown in Fig. 5.8. Charged particle telescopes are used which provide measurements of the energy spectra of light particles from about 15 MeV to 400 MeV for protons and other  $Z=1$  and  $Z=2$  ions from 5 MeV to 70 MeV/u (see above). These measurements are strictly secondary radiation due to the Earth's geomagnetic cut-offs, which exclude particles below a few hundred MeV/u from entering the spacecraft orbit. Excellent agreement with the HZETRN code for protons is found. For deuteron spectra the agreement is satisfactory only when knockout deuterons from proton and neutron induced reactions are included. For  $^3\text{He}$  and  $^4\text{He}$  the agreement is less satisfactory, and may point to a deficiency in the evaporation cross sections of the FLUKA model used by HZETRN.

(249) Detailed simulations of the radiation environment in the ISS from trapped proton radiation have been performed by Wilson et al. (2007) using the HZETRN code and Ersmark et al. (2007) using the Geant4 code. The anisotropy of the radiation field due to variation in shielding has also been studied.



3260  
3261  
3262  
3263  
3264

Fig. 5.8. Comparison of calculated (HZETRN code) and measured energy distributions of secondary protons (a) and deuterons (b) from GCR during STS-48 (Badhwar et al., 1995). Calculated proton and deuteron radiance (A) including knockout particles from proton and neutron induced reactions, (B) without those contributions.

3265

## 5.5 Radiation Shielding

3266

(250) Shielding models are applied for the spacecraft and spacesuits and allow evaluation of the interior environment to which the astronauts are exposed. The models describe the distribution of materials in the walls of and within the spacecraft and appropriate computational procedures are used to evaluate the interior field of transmitted particles. The internal environment, especially which based on protons from the SAA, shows a non-homogenous distribution with large spatial gradients and variations with time over both short-term and long-term temporal scales.

(251) With the exception of the absolute intensity of the trapped environment and possible solar particle events, the interior radiation environment can be well described using computational models. High-speed computational procedures allow rapid mapping of the interiors of the spacecraft.

(252) The interior environment of the spacecraft is also monitored by various instruments, which can be used to adjust the trapped-particle intensity, reduce the uncertainty in the model estimates, evaluate transmission factors, and evaluate calculated dosimetric quantities.

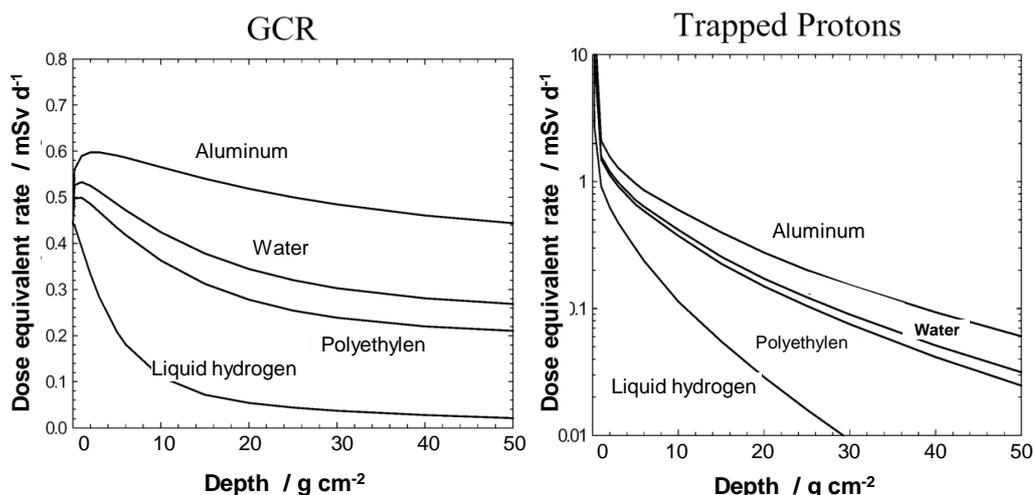
(253) Materials with light constituent atoms, such as hydrogen are most efficient per unit mass of material at slowing down ions, attenuating heavy ion projectiles through projectile fragmentation, and minimizing the build-up of neutrons and other target fragments produced directly from the shielding by nuclear interaction. Energy loss through ionisation is proportional to the number of electrons per atom ( $Z/A$ ) where  $Z$  is the charge number and  $A$  the mass number, and the energy loss per unit mass is proportional to  $(Z/\rho A)$  where  $\rho$  is the density of the material. For the GCR, materials such as aluminum (the most common spacecraft material) have relatively flat depth-dose equivalent responses due to the build-up of light particles in balance with the attenuation of heavy ions (Wilson *et al.*, 1995a). Materials, such as concrete or lead, have a response to the GCR that is predicted to increase the dose with shielding depth because of the large production of neutrons and target

3292

3293 fragments. Spacecraft materials are often deficient in hydrogen and therefore neutron spectra  
 3294 will change appreciably in the first few cm of tissue as low-energy neutrons (< 5 MeV) are  
 3295 produced more frequently compared to aluminum or other common spacecraft materials.

3296 (254) For a given area density and a given incident charged particle, ionisation energy loss  
 3297 increases with the charge-to-mass ratio of the target nucleus ( $Z_T/A_T$ ), while the fragmentation  
 3298 cross section per unit mass is proportional to  $A_T^{-1/3}$ . Hence, hydrogen is the most efficient  
 3299 material for shielding against heavy ions, and materials abundant in loosely bonded hydrogen  
 3300 atoms are excellent candidates for efficient radiation shielding.

3301

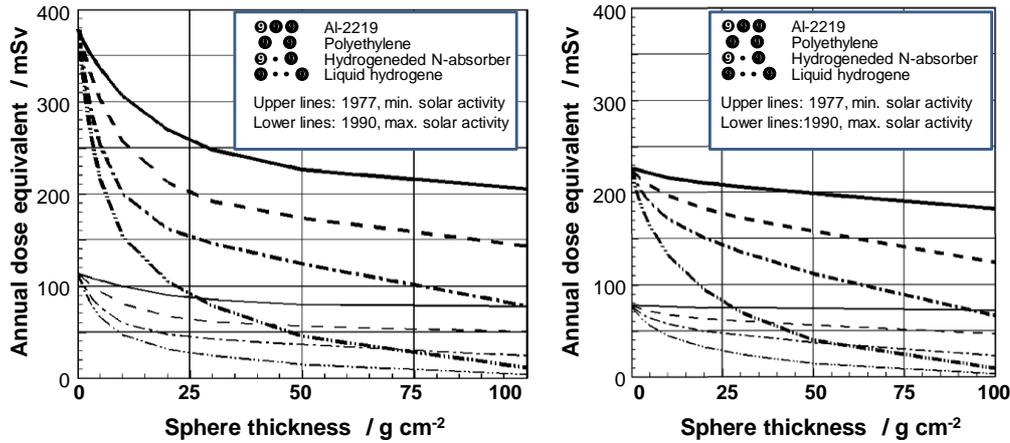


3302  
 3303 Fig. 5.9. Calculated dose equivalent rate in tissue versus shielding thickness for different shielding  
 3304 materials in the ISS orbit for GCR and trapped protons and solar minimum conditions (Cucinotta et  
 3305 al., 2000b)

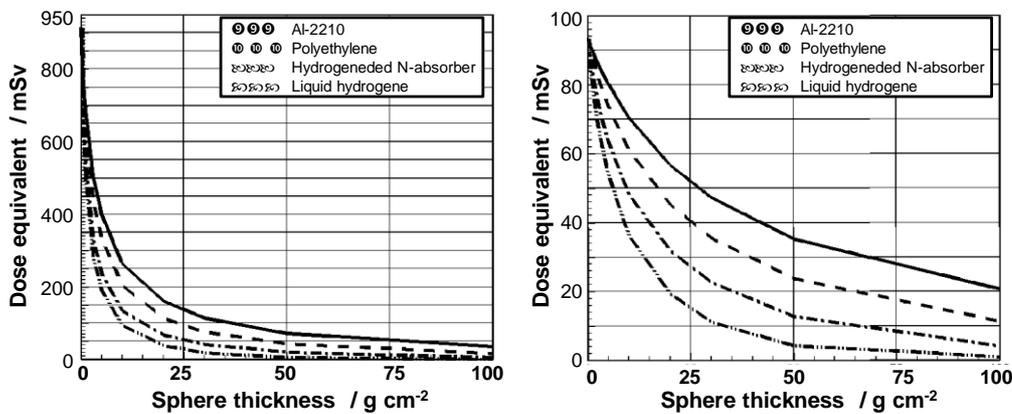
3306  
 3307 (255) Having just one shielding material is an ideal case, which will in practice be very  
 3308 hard to realize. The final shielding effectiveness will therefore also depend on the geometry  
 3309 and the abundance of the various other materials used in the shielding. Ultimately, detailed  
 3310 simulations will always be mandatory in evaluating and designing a realistic spacecraft or  
 3311 habitat. Simulations suggest that shielding is effective against trapped protons in LEO, but its  
 3312 efficiency is poor against GCR penetration. This is demonstrated clearly in Fig. 5.9.

3313 (256) In case of thicker shields, the neutrons, which as primary components of space  
 3314 radiation are negligible, can become a noticeable source of radiation exposure. This occurs  
 3315 not only in heavier shielded spacecraft but also on planetary or lunar surfaces which lack an  
 3316 atmosphere thick enough to attenuate the primary radiation source to a reasonably low level.  
 3317 On the surface of Mars and even more so of the Moon, these secondary “albedo” neutrons  
 3318 emerging from the ground contribute significantly to the overall exposure, in particular, since  
 3319 neutrons are high-LET radiation with a high radiobiological effectiveness.

3320 (257) There is an immense body of work already done in developing shielding strategies  
 3321 for human space exploration missions. This activity resulted in numerous workshops and  
 3322 publications in this field (Wilson et al., 1995a; Durante and Cucinotta, 2011). As mentioned  
 3323 above, all calculations and measurements show that hydrogenous materials are the best  
 3324 candidates per unit mass basis. The next set of figures (Fig. 5.10) taken from Wilson et al.  
 3325 (2001) shows this clearly for cosmic ray spectra on Moon and Mars and a worst-case SPE.



(a) GCR at the Moon (left) and Mars (right)



(b) Worst Case SPE at the Moon (left) and Mars (right)

Fig.5.10. Set of calculations showing dose equivalents for different shielding materials versus shielding thickness on the surface of Moon (left) and Mars (right) for GCR (a) and a worst-case SPE (4x the fluence of the SPE on Sept. 1989) (b) (Wilson et al., 2001)

(258) Much of the protection inside a spacecraft is provided by structural elements and the equipment present in it. For the structure of the spacecraft, a compromise between shielding efficiency and mechanical stability needs to be chosen, with multifunctional materials needed to optimize the process. For a shelter inside the spacecraft there are not such restrictions – if the material is acceptable for space application – and the efficiency per mass is the only important endpoint. Some recent studies were performed for different shielding materials as shown in Fig 5.11 for vertical incidence (Zeitlin et al., 2006). The effect of the incidence angle of the particles in producing secondary neutrons is complex and exhibits a strong interaction with the type of the shielding material. Such studies of course need to be extended.

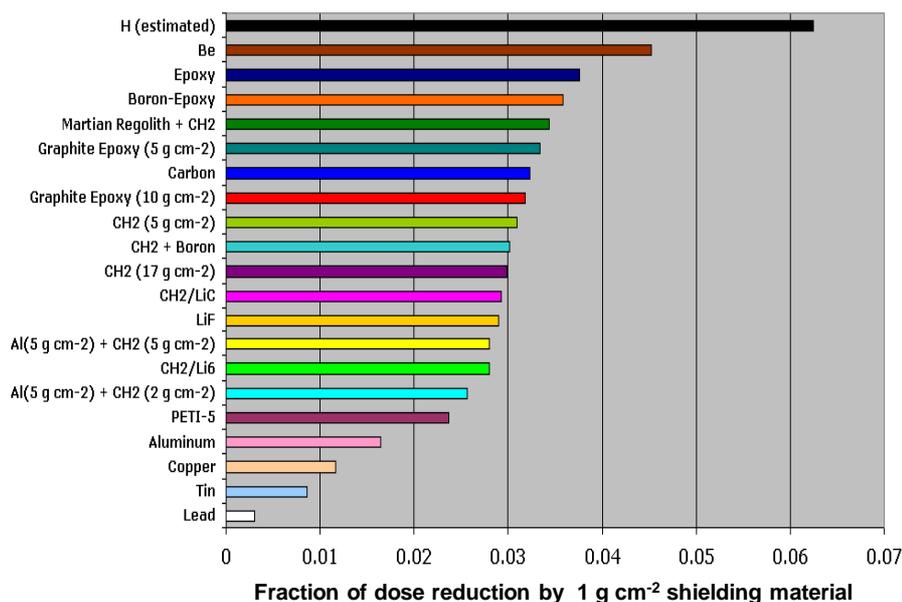


Fig 5.11. Fraction of dose reduction in a body by a 1 g cm<sup>-2</sup> thick shielding for different shielding materials and incident Fe particles of 1067 MeV/u. (Zeitlin et al., 2006)

3346  
3347  
3348  
3349

(259) Since the earliest attempts at in situ space radiation dosimetry, it has been known that - even for the most simple transport problems - satisfactory agreement between measurements and calculations would not be attainable unless the detailed thickness distribution around the point of interest were known, especially if areas of thinner shield were present. Therefore estimates of radiation exposures for ‘homogeneous’ ‘isotropic’ shields of an ‘average’ thickness can only serve for qualitative comparison of different configurations. For accurate quantitative assessments of radiation exposures, the knowledge of the distribution of the surrounding shield matter as a function of representative shield thickness is essential.

3350  
3351  
3352  
3353  
3354  
3355  
3356  
3357  
3358  
3359  
3360  
3361  
3362  
3363  
3364  
3365  
3366  
3367  
3368  
3369  
3370  
3371

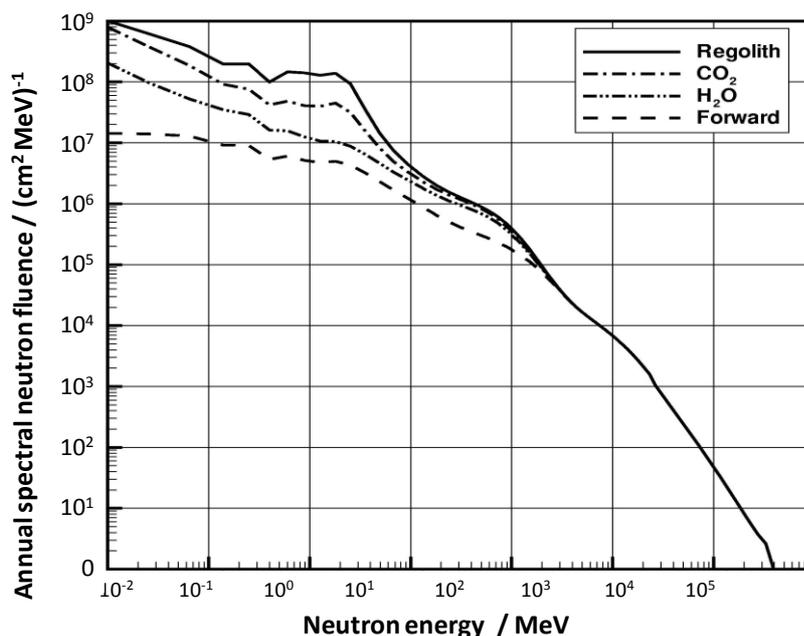
(260) Shielding to galactic cosmic radiation is generally limited. Nevertheless, with the selection of optimized shield material and an optimal inclusion of consumables in the shield design, a significant dose reduction of about 30 % can be achieved at solar minimum and to a lesser extent at solar maximum. For SPE’s the reduction is highly dependent on the initial proton spectrum; however shielding can reduce effective doses by factors of 2 to more than 10. As a first step definition, procurement and characterisation of candidate flexible materials – to be used in future manned missions in LEO and beyond, for inhabited structures has to be done. Computer codes are the tool to make the characterisation of such materials. The next step is the improvement and validation of the models and tools for shielding analysis, by comparison with measurements from accelerator shielding studies and with flight measurements, correlation and tuning of models, with the objective of reducing the overall uncertainty.

## 5.6 Lunar and Mars Surface

3372  
3373  
3374  
3375  
3376  
3377

(261) There are two effects strongly influencing the radiation environment on planetary or lunar surfaces compared to the GCR in free space. Because of the shielding of the ground, the cosmic radiation is incident on the surface only in 2π-geometry. In addition, from the surface of Mars or the Earth’s Moon, albedo radiation occurs. Photons, neutrons or secondary

3378 charged particles produced by neutrons will occur and will be dependent on the soil and  
 3379 atmospheric (on Mars) atomic composition including the presence of CO<sub>2</sub> or water frost and  
 3380 higher neutron fluence rate from lunar or Mars regolith (Cloudsley et al., 2000). Neutrons  
 3381 may be divided into a forward component produced by GCR interactions with the atmosphere  
 3382 and albedo components on planetary surfaces such as Mars. Albedo neutrons may be  
 3383 produced as deep as 1 meter into the soil and their flux will be influenced by the soil  
 3384 composition and seasonal variations in temperature as illustrated in Figure 5.12. Large dust  
 3385 storms on Mars could lead to additional scattering of neutrons and charged particles (Wilson  
 3386 et al., 1995a).



3387 Fig. 5.12 Energy distribution of neutron fluence on the Mars surface calculated with HZETRN  
 3388 showing the annual contributions from the forward component produced by GCR in the Mars  
 3389 atmosphere and the albedo component that are dependent on the composition of the Mars  
 3390 surface (Wilson et al., 2004).  
 3391

3392  
 3393

## 3394 6. RADIATION FIELDS AND DOSES IN THE HUMAN BODY

3395  
 3396

3397 (262) The radiation fields inside astronauts differ from those outside because of atomic  
 3398 and nuclear interactions in the human body. The analysis of particle transport inside the body  
 3399 is indispensable for the estimation of doses in astronauts and risks of both stochastic and  
 3400 deterministic effects due to cosmic radiation exposures. Various simulation codes (see 5.3)  
 3401 and computational phantoms, which represent the anatomy of human body or parts thereof,  
 3402 have been employed for this analysis. In radiological protection, the mean absorbed dose in  
 3403 an organ or tissue,  $D_T$ , is the basic quantity for a specification of doses in humans (see  
 3404 Chapter 3). In addition, appropriate weighting factors need to be applied to  $D_T$  for the  
 3405 assessment of risk of stochastic or deterministic detriments due to radiation exposure.

3406 (263) Generally, two different procedures may be applied for the assessment of doses in

3407 the human body, either by calculations or by measurements combined with calculations.  
3408 Radiation field parameters, e. g. particle fluence, particle spectra and LET-distributions,  
3409 outside or within a spacecraft may be determined either by measurements or calculations and  
3410 then doses in organs and tissues of the human body may be calculated using particle transport  
3411 codes. There are two possibilities in performing this task. One may either assess the radiation  
3412 field parameters (e.g. energy distribution of fluence,  $D(L)$ -distributions etc.) (Section 5.3)  
3413 near to an astronaut and then apply fluence-to-dose conversion coefficients for all types of  
3414 particles involved for the assessment of organ doses (see Sect. 6.2) or one can generally  
3415 calculate organ doses in a body using the radiation field data outside of the spacecraft and a  
3416 code which combines radiation transport in the spacecraft and in the human body (see Sect.  
3417 6.3).

3418 (264) Alternatively, absorbed dose or dose equivalent may be measured near to the body  
3419 of the person of interest and these values may be directly correlated to doses in the human  
3420 body. This is the usual procedure performed in individual dosimetry on the Earth, where the  
3421 reading of an individual dosimeter for strongly-penetrating radiation is taken as a value of  
3422 effective dose sufficiently precise for the purpose of usual radiological protection. In space,  
3423 however, this method is a difficult task because of the very complex radiation field, which  
3424 also shows variations with time and position within a spacecraft. As shown in Chapter 4, no  
3425 single device will probably be able to fulfil this task, and a set of different detectors may be  
3426 necessary for the assessment of dose equivalent in an organ or tissue or effective dose  
3427 equivalent. The position and orientation of a person within the spacecraft can introduce  
3428 variations in organ doses due to the anisotropic spacecraft shielding distributions, which can  
3429 be important for solar protons and trapped radiation (Wilson et al., 1995c). In any case,  
3430 particle transport calculations need to be used for testing if a system is appropriate for the  
3431 foreseen task.

3432

## 3433 6.1 Phantoms

3434

3435 (265) The first computational phantom was developed at the Oak Ridge National  
3436 Laboratory (Snyder et al., 1969) for the Medical Internal Radiation Dose (MIRD) Committee  
3437 of the Society of Nuclear Medicine. The MIRD phantom designed as a hermaphrodite  
3438 including organs and tissues of both sexes has been widely used in varieties of the radiation  
3439 protection researches, in combination with various Monte Carlo codes. On the other hand, the  
3440 Computerized Anatomical Man (CAM) (Billings and Yucker, 1973) and Computerized  
3441 Anatomical Female (CAF) (Yucker and Huston, 1990) phantoms were developed in 1973 and  
3442 1990, respectively. They have a long history in space radiation research at NASA, in  
3443 combination with the transport code HZETRN. These phantoms are based upon mathematical  
3444 expressions representing planes, and cylindrical, conical, elliptical and spherical surfaces that  
3445 describe the shape and position of idealized body organs.

3446 (266) As an extension and improvement to these earlier models, various groups have  
3447 developed a new type of anatomical phantom during the last two decades, called  
3448 “tomographic” or “voxel” phantom. Voxel phantoms are anatomical models based on  
3449 computed tomography, magnetic resonance, or other images obtained from high-resolution  
3450 scans of a single individual and, thus, offer a more realistic replication of human anatomy.  
3451 They consist of a large number of volume elements (voxels) and are the most detailed  
3452 representation of human anatomy at the present time. However, being derived from a specific  
3453 individual, these models do not represent the average Caucasian man or woman as defined by  
3454 Publication 23 (ICRP, 1975) and Publication 89 (ICRP, 2002). To avoid this inconsistency,

3455 the Commission introduced reference voxel phantoms representing the adult Reference Male  
 3456 and Reference Female defined in Publication 110 (ICRP, 2009), which were constructed  
 3457 based on medical image data of real persons, but their anatomical parameters were modified  
 3458 to be consistent with those given in Publication 89. These phantoms are used by the  
 3459 Commission in establishing radiation protection guidance and reference data, e.g. conversion  
 3460 coefficients for dosimetric quantities. NASA has used the voxel approach based on the  
 3461 MAX/FAX voxel model in a ray tracing approach appropriate for the HZETRN code (Slaba  
 3462 et al. 2010, Kim et al., 2010b)

3463 (267) One limitation of the phantoms is that their resolutions are not high enough to  
 3464 reproduce the thin structure of a tissue or organ located at or near to the surface of human  
 3465 body, e.g. skin and lens of the eye. This causes both overestimation and underestimation of  
 3466 doses in such tissue and organ for the irradiation by low-energy particles such as trapped  
 3467 protons and electrons. Thus, special procedures are required to precisely calculate the dose in  
 3468 such tissues or organs, using the phantoms. A more detailed description on this issue is given  
 3469 in Publication 110 (ICRP, 2009).

3470 (268) For realization of anthropomorphic phantoms, several materials such as water and  
 3471 tissue-equivalent plastics are used on ground. On the other hand, only solid plastic phantoms  
 3472 can be launched to space for practical reasons. The RANDO<sup>®</sup> phantoms of head and upper  
 3473 torso had been mounted on the Space Shuttle (Konradi et al., 1992, Yasuda et al., 2000,  
 3474 Badhwar et al., 2002) and the ISS (Cucinotta et al., 2008). The other RANDO<sup>®</sup> phantom had  
 3475 been exposed outside the ISS as a part of the MATROSHKA project (Reitz et al., 2009). A  
 3476 spherical phantom composed of tissue-equivalent plastic has also been mounted on the ISS as  
 3477 part of the MATROSHKA-R project (Shurshakov et al., 2004). A number of passive and  
 3478 active detectors were inserted in or attached on the phantoms. The data obtained from the  
 3479 detectors are useful in validating the accuracy of particle transport simulations performed  
 3480 using the computational phantoms.

3481

## 3482 6.2 Dose conversion coefficients

3483

### 3484 Mean absorbed dose in organs and tissues

3485 (269) For a given organ T and radiation type R, the mean absorbed dose in the organ,  $D_{T,R}$ ,  
 3486 can be obtained folding the energy distribution of the fluence of particles incident on the  
 3487 human body with the fluence-to-absorbed dose conversion coefficients for that organ,  
 3488  $d_{T,R}(E)$ . It is:

3489 
$$D_{T,R} = \int_0^{\infty} d_{T,R}(E) \frac{d\Phi_R}{dE} dE \quad , \quad (6.1)$$

3490 where  $\Phi_R$  is the fluence of particles of type R incident on the body. Because conversion  
 3491 coefficients,  $d_{T,R}$ , are mainly available for a homogeneous exposure of the human body, only,  
 3492 the application of this equation assumes always a uniform exposure of the body. In cases  
 3493 where this assumption is not approximately satisfied, further considerations are needed for  
 3494 the application of this approach.

3495 (270) For assessing organ doses it is necessary to have conversion coefficients for all  
 3496 organs and tissues of the human body, for all particles and energies of interest and for the real  
 3497 geometry of irradiation.

3498 (271) For the calculation of conversion coefficients, an exposure of a mathematical  
 3499 anthropomorphic phantom is simulated for the incidence of monoenergetic particles  
 3500 according to simple geometries, mostly homogeneous frontal incidence (AP), incidence from

3501 the right or left side (RLAT, LLAT), from the back (PA) or rotational (ROT) and isotropic  
 3502 (ISO) exposure. The isotropic irradiation is usually assumed to appropriately describe the  
 3503 exposure of astronauts to cosmic radiation, mainly due to the isotropic fluence rate of the  
 3504 GCR and the movement of the astronauts in the spacecraft. Nevertheless, this assumption  
 3505 may not always represent the situation well (Wilson et al., 1995c).

3506 (272) The absorbed dose in the various organs and tissues of the human body are  
 3507 estimated from the energies deposited in the regions assigned to each organ divided by their  
 3508 masses. In the case of the voxel phantoms the mean absorbed doses in the organs are  
 3509 estimated from the energies deposited in the voxels assigned to each organ divided by the  
 3510 organ mass. This method has been applied in most organs, including skin, for the calculations  
 3511 of the conversion coefficients adopted by the Commission. Exceptions are the red bone  
 3512 marrow and bone surface (endosteum), which are tissues not explicitly defined in the  
 3513 reference phantoms. According to Schlattl et al. (Schlattl et al., 2007), the mean absorbed dose  
 3514 in red bone marrow,  $D_{\text{RBM}}$ , and in endosteum,  $D_{\text{Endosteum}}$ , are determined respectively by

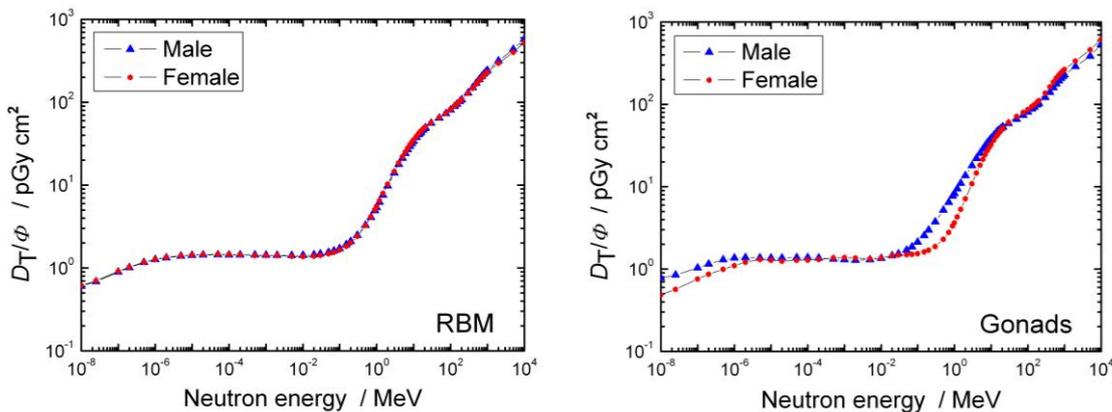
3515 
$$D_{\text{RBM}} = \sum_i \frac{m_{\text{RBM},i}}{m_{\text{RBM}}} D_{\text{spongiosa},i} \quad (6.2)$$

3516 and

3517 
$$D_{\text{Endosteum}} = \sum_i \frac{m_{\text{Endosteum},i}}{m_{\text{Endosteum}}} D_{\text{spongiosa},i} \quad (6.3)$$

3518 where  $m_{\text{RBM},i}$  is the mass of RBM in i-th spongiosa region,  $m_{\text{RBM}}$  the total mass of RBM,  
 3519  $D_{\text{spongiosa},i}$  the dose of i-th spongiosa region,  $m_{\text{Endosteum},i}$  the mass of endosteum in i-th  
 3520 spongiosa region and  $m_{\text{Endosteum}}$  the total mass of endosteum.

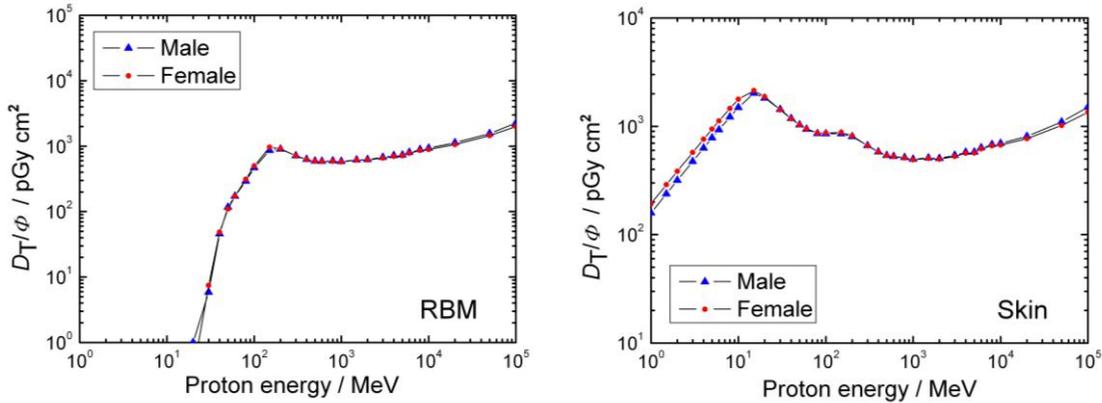
3521 (273) As an example, conversion coefficients for red bone marrow and gonads,  
 3522 respectively, published by the Commission for isotropic irradiation of the reference adult  
 3523 male and female phantoms are shown in Fig. 6.1 as a function of neutron energy (ICRP,  
 3524 2012).



3525 Fig. 6.1. Fluence to mean absorbed dose conversion coefficients for red bone marrow (left) and  
 3526 gonads (right) as a function of neutron energy for isotropic irradiation of the adult male and female  
 3527 reference phantoms (ICRP, 2012).  
 3528

3529  
 3530 (274) Figure 6.2 shows similar conversion coefficients for red bone marrow and skin,  
 3531 respectively, as a function of energy for protons (ICRP, 2012). It should be noted that the  
 3532 gender dependence of the organ doses are significant only for few organs and varies with the  
 3533 type and energy of the radiation involved.  
 3534

3535



3536

3537

Fig. 6.2. Fluence to mean absorbed dose conversion coefficients for red bone marrow (left) and skin (right) as a function of proton energy for isotropic irradiation of the adult male and female reference phantoms (ICRP, 2012).

3539

3540

3541

(275) The fluence to mean absorbed dose conversion coefficients for organs and tissues of the body have been systematically calculated for heavy ions with atomic numbers up to 28 and energies from 1 MeV/u to 100 GeV/u using the PHITS code coupled to the reference voxel phantoms (Sato et al., 2010), following the instruction given in Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007). A full set of data for male and female and isotropic exposure of the body is given in the Annex of this report.

3542

3543

3544

3545

3546

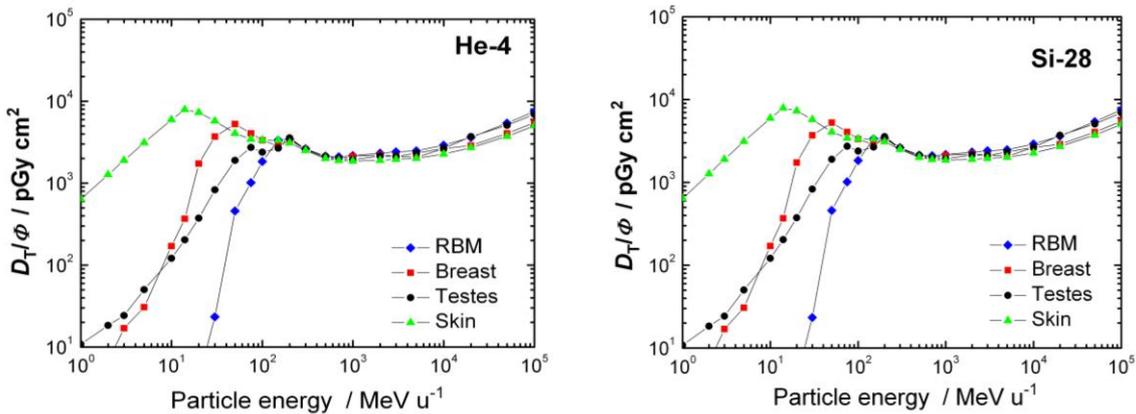
3547

(276) As an example, the data for red bone marrow (RBM), breast, stomach and skin are plotted in Figures 6.3 for isotropic (ISO) irradiation of the reference adult male phantom with <sup>4</sup>He and <sup>28</sup>Si ions, respectively.

3548

3549

3550



3551

3552

Fig. 6.3. Fluence to mean absorbed dose conversion coefficients for various tissues as a function of particle energy for isotropic irradiation of the reference adult male phantom by <sup>4</sup>He ions (left) and <sup>28</sup>Si (right).

3555

3556

3557

(277) It can be seen from figure 6.3 that the dose conversion coefficients for the organs are very different for the energies below about 200 MeV, while they are very similar for high-energies. At low energies, the incident particles have short ranges in tissue and will generally stop in an organ or tissue near to the surface (i.e. skin). At high energies, on the other hand,

3558

3559

3560

3561 the incident particles have very long ranges and generally penetrate the human body without  
 3562 forming the Bragg peak. Thus, the doses are more uniformly distributed inside the human  
 3563 body in comparison to low-energy particle irradiations.

3564

3565 **Organ and effective dose equivalent**

3566 (278) While fluence to mean absorbed dose conversion coefficients for organs and tissues,  
 3567  $d_{T,R}$ , are the basis for dose assessment in the human body, in mixed radiation fields with  
 3568 radiations of very different radiation quality fluence to dose equivalent conversion  
 3569 coefficients,  $h_{T,Q,R}$ , for organs and tissues are often more appropriate for radiation protection  
 3570 applications and risk assessments in space environment. Most space organizations (e.g.  
 3571 NASA, ESA, etc.) have adopted these quantities and corresponding conversion coefficients  
 3572 since the late 1990s (NCRP, 2000).

3573 (279) The calculation of the conversion coefficients for mean dose equivalents in organs  
 3574 and tissues and effective dose equivalent, are more complex than those for the absorbed  
 3575 doses, because the doses at the point of interest must be weighted by the quality factor as a  
 3576 function of LET. In this case, the charge and energy of ionizing particles depositing the  
 3577 energy at that point have to be determined. If kerma factors are used for determining the  
 3578 mean absorbed dose in tissues and organs (e.g. for neutrons below about 20 MeV) this does  
 3579 not allow the evaluation of a  $Q$ -value unless one includes further corrections.

3580 (280) The dose equivalent in an organ or tissue T,  $H_{T,Q}$ , is calculated by:

3581 
$$H_{T,Q} = \sum_R \int_E h_{T,Q,R}(E) \frac{d\Phi_E}{dE} dE = \sum_R \int_E Q_{T,R}(E) d_{T,R}(E) \frac{d\Phi_E}{dE} dE \quad (6.4)$$

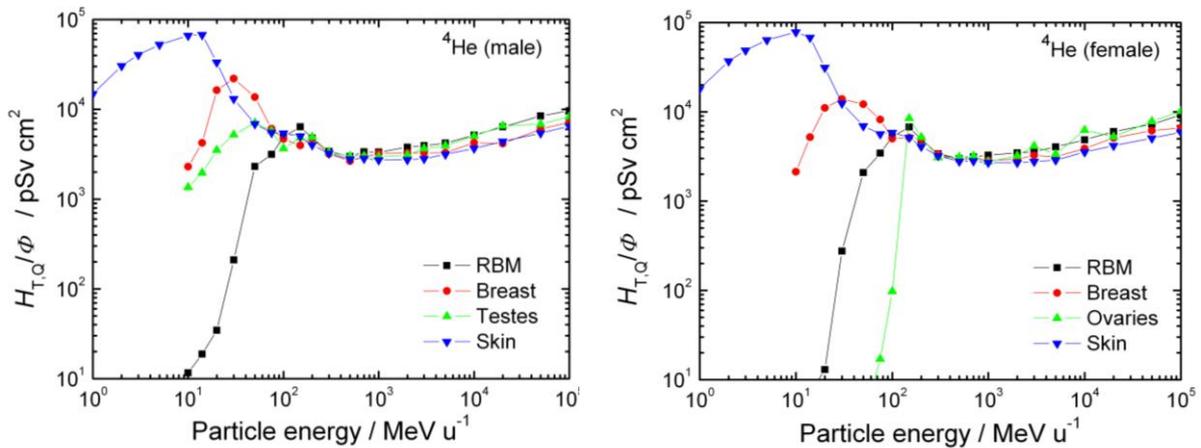
3582 with the mean quality factor  $Q_{T,R}$  based on  $Q(L)$  as given in eq. (3.10).

3583 (281) The mean quality factors,  $Q_{T,R}$ , and the fluence to organ dose equivalent conversion  
 3584 coefficients,  $h_{T,Q,R}$  for organs and tissues have been systematically calculated for heavy ions  
 3585 with atomic numbers up to 28 and energies from 1 MeV/u to 100 GeV/u using the PHITS  
 3586 code coupled to the reference voxel phantoms (Sato et al., 2010). Data of mean quality  
 3587 factors for organs and tissues and isotropic exposure of the body are also given in the Annex  
 3588 to this report.

3589 (282) The organ dose equivalent conversion coefficients obtained by PHITS for red bone  
 3590 marrow, breast, gonads (testes and ovaries, respectively) and skin of the adult male and  
 3591 female reference phantoms are depicted in Fig. 6.4 and 6.5 for ISO irradiation by  $^4\text{He}$  and  
 3592  $^{56}\text{Fe}$ , respectively.

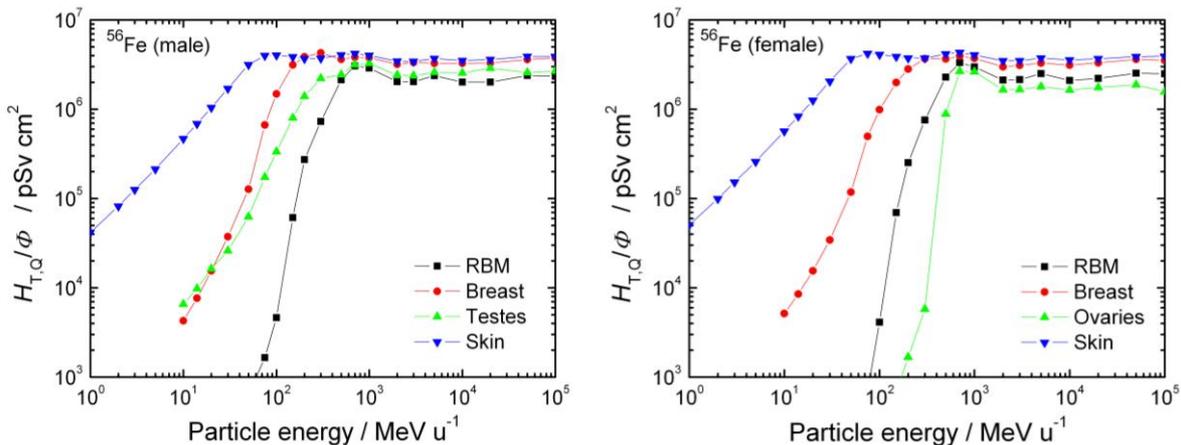
3593

3594



3596

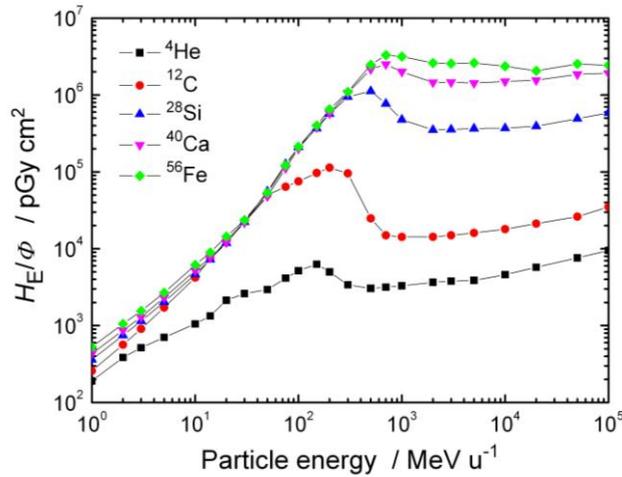
3598 Fig. 6.4. Fluence to organ dose equivalent conversion coefficients for various tissues as a function  
 3599 of the particle energy for <sup>4</sup>He ions and isotropic irradiation of the adult male (left) and female (right)  
 3600 reference phantom.



3601

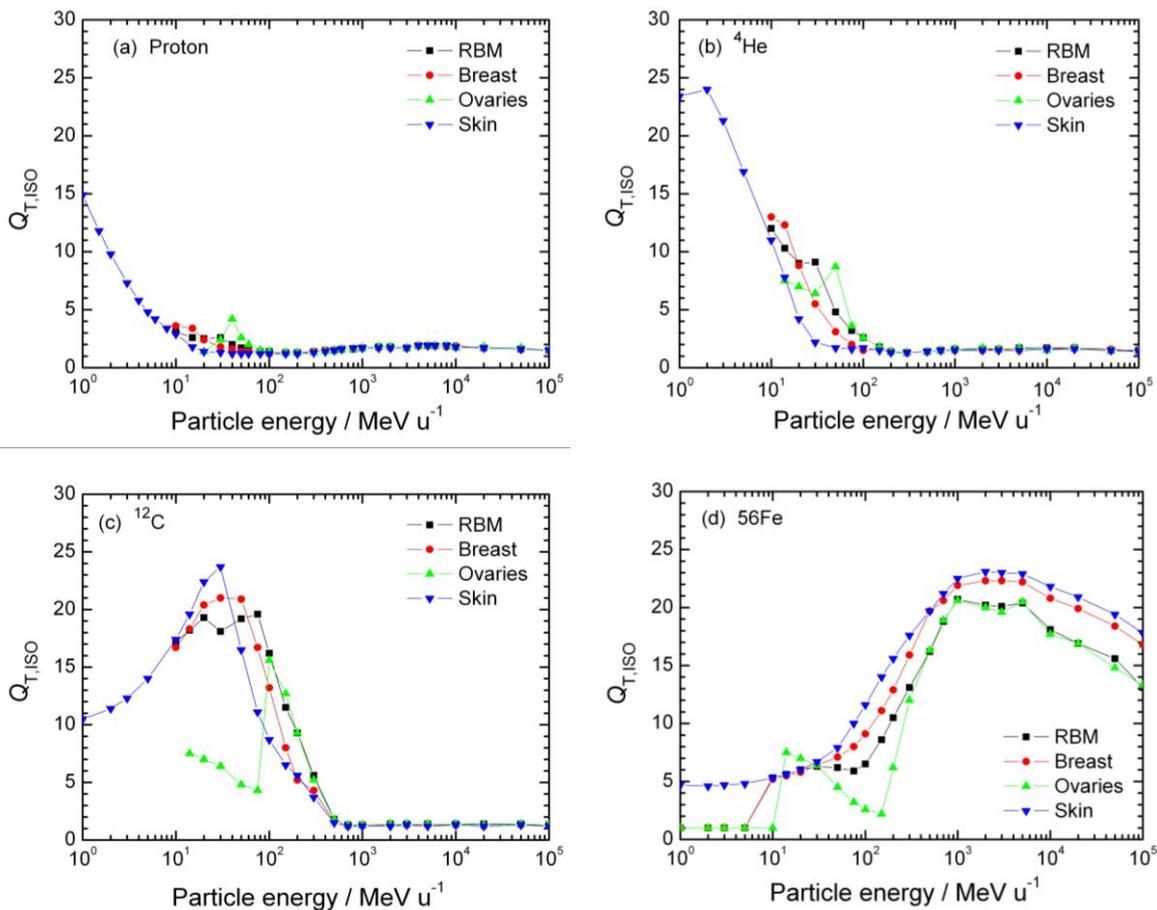
3602 Fig. 6.5. Fluence to organ dose equivalent conversion coefficients for various tissues as a function  
 3603 of the particle energy for <sup>56</sup>Fe ions and isotropic irradiation of the adult male (left) and female (right)  
 3604 reference phantom.  
 3605

3606 (283) As far as fluence-to-effective dose equivalent conversion coefficients are concerned,  
 3607 the data for neutrons are very similar to those for effective dose. Larger differences between  
 3608 conversion coefficients for effective dose and effective dose equivalent exist for low energy  
 3609 protons, where the value of the mean quality factor is much higher than the value of 2 for the  
 3610 radiation weighting factor. In high-energy proton fields, however, this difference is not very  
 3611 important because of the small contribution of low-energy protons to effective dose and  
 3612 effective dose equivalent. Fig. 6.6 presents some data for several heavy ions.



3613  
3614  
3615  
3616

Fig. 6.6. Fluence to effective dose equivalent conversion coefficients for several particles as a function of the particle energy for isotropic irradiation of adult male reference phantom.



3617

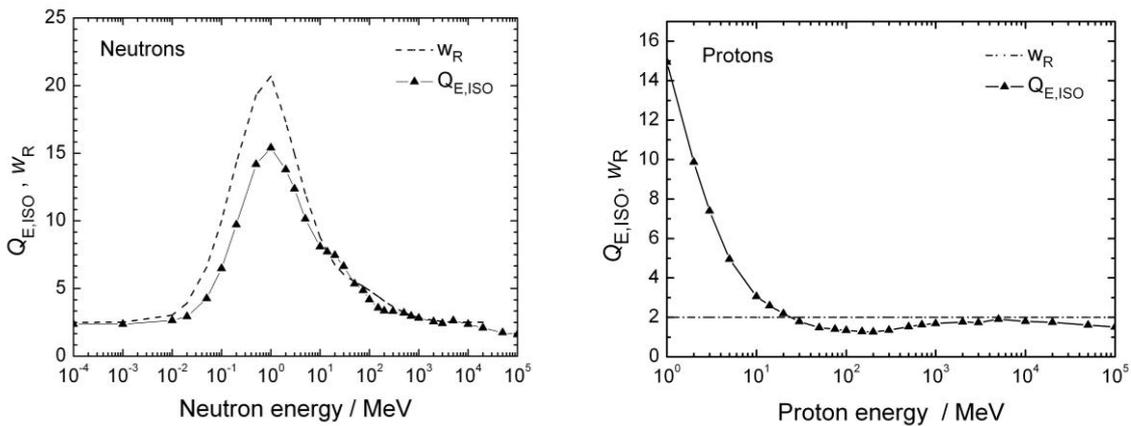
3618  
3619  
3620  
3621  
3622  
3623

Fig. 6.7. Mean quality factors,  $Q_{T,ISO}$ , based on  $Q(L)$  as defined in Publication 103, of some tissues as a function of particle energy for isotropic exposure of the adult female reference phantom by (a) p, (b)  $^4\text{He}$ , (c)  $^{12}\text{C}$  and (d)  $^{56}\text{Fe}$ .

(284) The ratio of the mean dose equivalent in an organ to the mean absorbed dose in that

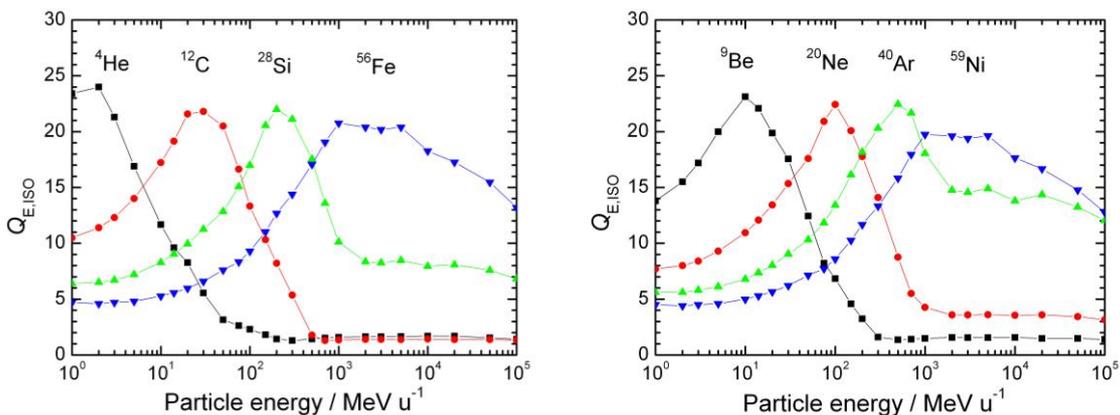
3624 organ gives the mean quality factor for that organ. As an example, Figures 6.7 a-d shows the  
 3625 mean quality factors for red bone marrow, breast, stomach and skin for exposure of the adult  
 3626 female reference phantom by protons,  $^4\text{He}$ -,  $^{12}\text{C}$ - and  $^{56}\text{Fe}$ -ions.

3627 (285) As can be seen in Fig. 6.7, for isotropic exposure to a specific ion type the  
 3628 differences in  $Q_T$  of the different organs and tissues are relatively small. Therefore, a human-  
 3629 body averaged quality factor (performed by weighting the organs and tissues (see eq. (3.12))  
 3630 using the tissue weighting factors given by the Commission (ICRP, 2007)) represents the  
 3631 radiation quality well in isotropic exposure situations.  
 3632



3633 (a) (b)  
 3634 Fig. 6.8. Phantom averaged quality factor,  $Q_{E,ISO}$ , as a function of neutron energy (a) and proton  
 3635 energy (b) for isotropic (ISO) exposure of the adult male reference phantom. The  $w_R$ -functions are  
 3636 additionally shown (dotted line).  
 3637  
 3638

3639 (286) While for AP radiation incidence body averaged quality factors for neutrons and  
 3640 protons are shown in Figs. 3.3 and 3.4, for data for isotropic exposure are given in the Annex  
 3641 and presented in Fig. 6.8a,b. In Fig. 6.9a, b similar data are shown for various heavy ions.

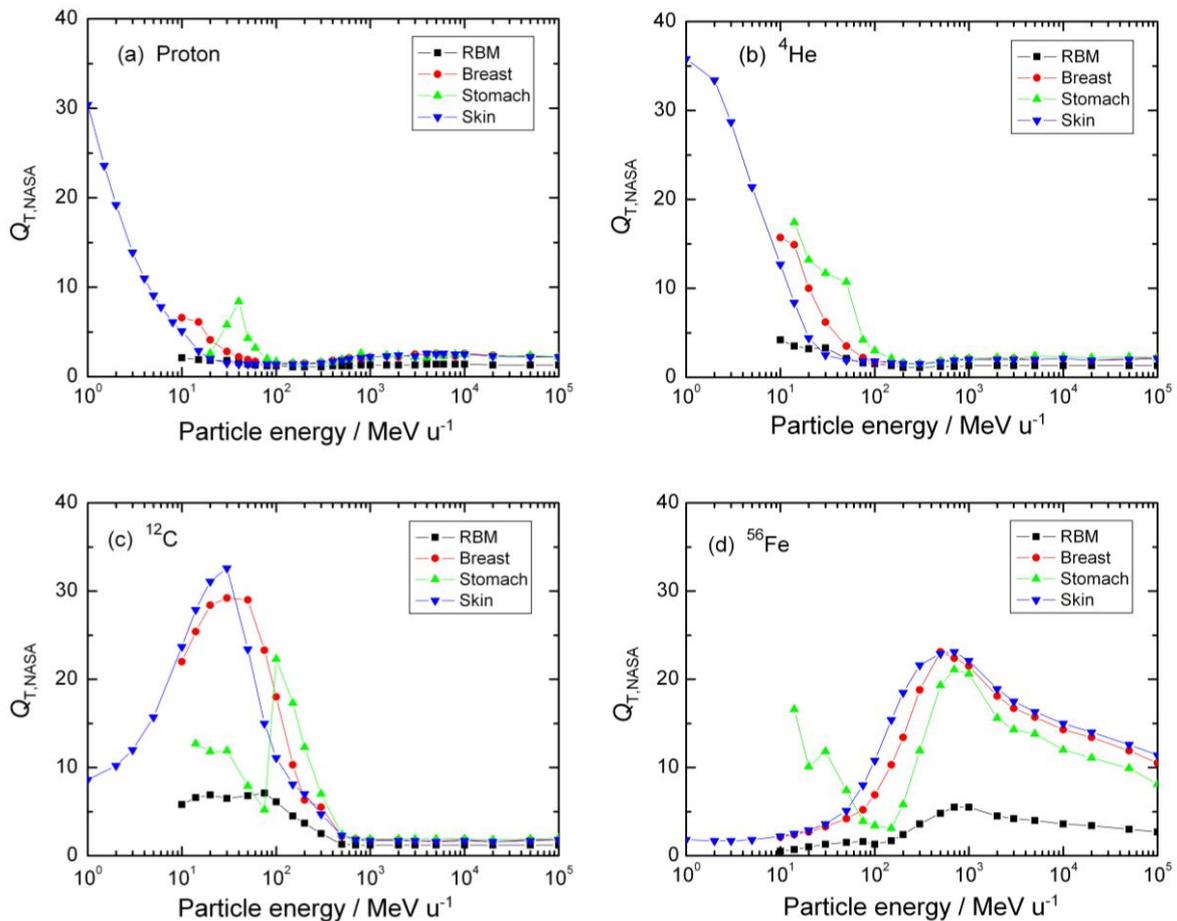


3642  
 3643 Fig. 6.9. Phantom averaged quality factor,  $Q_{E,ISO}$ , as function of particle energy for various particles  
 3644 and isotropic exposure of the adult male reference phantom.  
 3645

3646 (287) Mean quality factors for organs and tissues,  $Q_{T,NASA}$ , based on the  $Q$ -function as  
 3647 proposed by NASA for solid cancer (see Fig. 3.14), were also calculated using the PHITS  
 3648 code coupled to the reference voxel phantoms (Sato et al., 2012). As an example, figures 6.10

3649 a-d show  $Q_{T,NASA}$  of the red bone marrow, breast, stomach and skin for isotropic exposure by  
 3650 protons,  $^4\text{He}$ ,  $^{12}\text{C}$  and  $^{56}\text{Fe}$  ions. The values of red bone marrow were calculated using the  
 3651 NASA quality factor for leukaemia which is 1/4 of that for solid cancer.

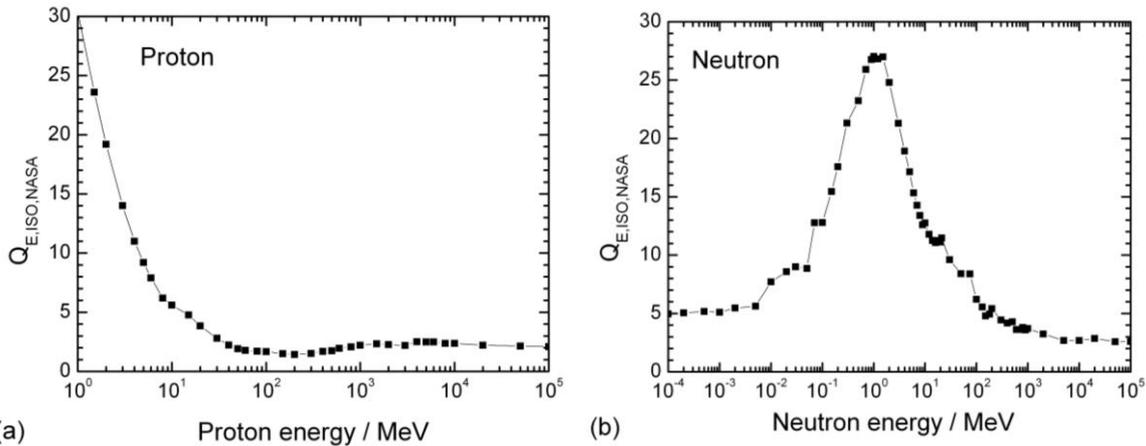
3652 (288) For proton and light ions, the values of  $Q_{T,NASA}$  are generally larger than the  
 3653 corresponding data based on the  $Q(L)$  function given in eq. (3.9) ICRP (Fig. 6.7), except for  
 3654 red bone marrow. For heavier ions, however, the values of  $Q_{T,NASA}$  are generally smaller than  
 3655 the corresponding values based on the ICRP function especially for very low and very high  
 3656 particle energies. The smaller  $Q_{T,NASA}$  observed at low energies is attributed to the strong  
 3657 decrease of  $Q_{T,NASA}$  with increasing  $L$  in the high-LET region, while for high particle energies  
 3658 the consideration of the track structure in the NASA concept is important.



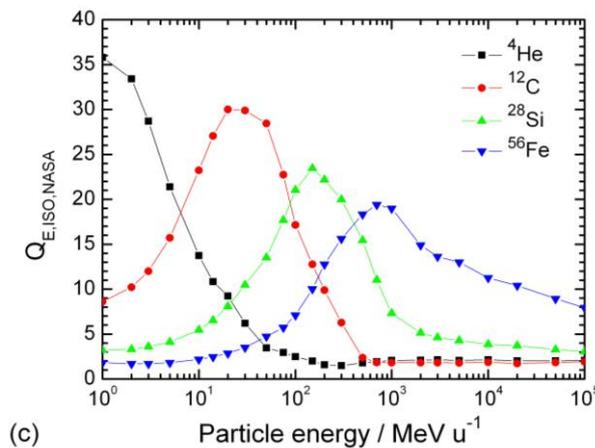
3659

3660 Fig. 6.10. Mean quality factors,  $Q_{T,NASA}$ , based on the  $Q$ -function proposed by NASA, of some  
 3661 organs as a function of particle energy for isotropic exposure of the adult female reference phantom  
 3662 by (a) protons, (b)  $^4\text{He}$ , (c)  $^{12}\text{C}$  and (d)  $^{56}\text{Fe}$ .  
 3663  
 3664

3665 (289) Figure 6.11 shows human body averaged quality factors based on  $Q_{T,NASA}$  for  
 3666 isotropic exposure of the adult female reference phantom by various particles. The tissue  
 3667 weighting factor,  $w_T$ , as defined in Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007) were adopted in the  
 3668 calculation.  
 3669



3670



3671

3672 Fig. 6.11 Phantom averaged quality factor,  $Q_{E,ISO,NASA}$ , as function of particle energy for protons  
 3673 (a), neutrons (b) and various other ions (c) and isotropic exposure the adult male reference phantom.

3674

### 3675 6.3 Calculation of organ doses of astronauts within spacecraft

3676

3677 (290) Generally, organ doses in a body may be calculated using the radiation field  
 3678 parameters outside the spacecraft and a code which combines radiation transport in the  
 3679 spacecraft and in the human body. In principle, this procedure takes account of all  
 3680 inhomogeneities of the radiation field inside the spacecraft due to the variations in the  
 3681 spacecraft wall and the distribution of the material inside the spacecraft. The approach has  
 3682 been realized by NASA using the very fast radiation transport code HZETRN together with  
 3683 various human phantoms (see e.g. Wilson, et al., 1995c, Badhwar et al., 2002, Cucinotta et al.,  
 3684 2008). The external radiation field parameters to be known include the energy and directional  
 3685 distribution of the fluence of all types of radiation involved. Also the time dependence of  
 3686 some contributions needs to be known. This approach can be applied to the field for EVA and  
 3687 for astronauts in a habitat on the moon or planet.

3688 (291) For checking this method, phantom torsos comprised of realistic distributions of  
 3689 human tissue equivalent materials have been flown on several space shuttle missions. Organ  
 3690 dose equivalents have been estimated by using a combined TLD and PNTD (CR-39) detector  
 3691 methodology (Badhwar et al., 2002; Yasuda et al., 2000). Table 6.1 shows a comparison of  
 3692 data calculated using the HZETRN/QMSFRG model (Cucinotta et al., 2008) to those from

3693 measurements of Yasuda et al. (2000) on space shuttle mission STS-91, which flew in a 51.6  
 3694 inclination orbit to the Mir station a similar orbit as flown by ISS. The corresponding data  
 3695 calculated by PHITS coupled with the dose conversion coefficients for isotropic irradiation  
 3696 are also given in the table (Sato et al., 2011).The comparison shows excellent agreement  
 3697 between measured and calculated data. The NASA phantom torso experiment that was flown  
 3698 on STS-91 (Badhwar et al., 2002), was re-flown on ISS Increment 2 in 2001. This experiment  
 3699 included several small active silicon detectors located at critical organ positions in the torso  
 3700 that provide time dependent dose data. The correlation of the time dependent data to the ISS  
 3701 trajectory allows for separation of the individual contributions from trapped protons and GCR  
 3702 to organ doses. Table 6.2 shows comparison of the HZETRN/QMSFRG results (without  
 3703 scaling) to the measurements indicating good agreement. The results show that the ratio of  
 3704 the GCR to trapped proton absorbed dose is about 2:1. Mean quality factors without tissue  
 3705 shielding for GCR (~3.5) are more than twice as high as that for the trapped protons (~1.5).  
 3706 These results support the assumption that organ dose equivalents for ISS missions and many  
 3707 space shuttle missions are predominantly from GCR.

3708 Table 6.1. Comparison of measured organ dose equivalent for STS-91 mission using a combined  
 3709 PNTD/TLD method and data calculated using the HZETRN/QMSFRG model with random  
 3710 orientation in the spacecraft (Yasuda et al., 2000), as well as using PHITS coupled with the dose  
 3711 conversion coefficients(DCC) for isotropic irradiation (Sato et al., 2011).

Tissue	Organ dose equivalent / mSv				
	Measured	HZETRN/ QMSFRG	Diff. %	PHITS/ DCC	Diff. %
Skin	4.5 ±0.05	4.7	4.4	5.3	18.5
Thyroid	4.0 ±0.21	4.0	0	4.2	4.9
Bone surface	5.2 ±0.22	4.0	-23.1	4.3	-17.8
Esophagus	3.4 ±0.49	3.7	8.8	3.6	5.4
Lung	4.4 ±0.76	3.8	-13.6	3.9	-12.3
Stomach	4.3 ±0.94	3.6	-16.3	3.5	-17.5
Liver	4.0 ±0.51	3.7	-7.5	3.6	-10.7
Bone marrow	3.4 ±0.40	3.9	14.7	3.7	9.5
Colon	3.6 ±0.42	3.9	8.3	3.7	1.9
Bladder	3.6 ±0.24	3.5	-2.8	3.5	-2.3
Gonad	4.7 ±0.71	3.9	-17.0	4.2	-10.3
Breast	4.5 ±0.11	4.5	0	5.2	16.2
Remainder	4.0 ±0.57	4.0	0	3.7	-6.5
<b>Effective dose equivalent</b>	4.1 ±0.22	3.9	4.9	3.9	4.9

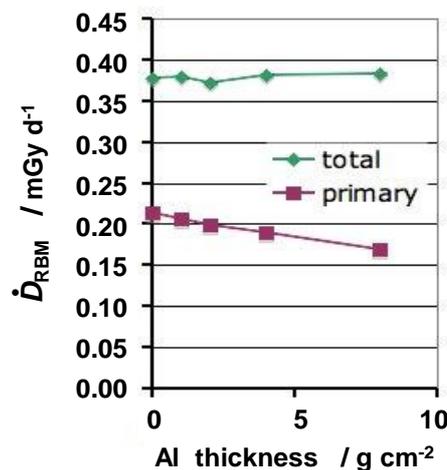
3712  
 3713  
 3714 Table 6.2. Comparison of the organ absorbed dose rate measured by the ISS Increment-2 Phantom  
 3715 Torso experiment (July-August, 2001) with predictions obtained using the HZETRN/QMSFRG  
 3716 model at a fixed position in the spacecraft (Badhwar *et al.*, 2002).  
 3717

Organ	Absorbed dose rate trapped radiation mGy/d		Absorbed dose rate from GCR mGy/d		Total absorbed dose rate mGy/d		Difference (%)
	Exp.	Model	Exp.	Model	Exp.	Model	
Brain	0.051	0.066	0.076	0.077	0.127	0.143	13.3

Thyroid	0.062	0.072	0.074	0.077	0.136	0.148	9.4
Heart	0.054	0.061	0.075	0.076	0.129	0.137	6.7
Stomach	0.050	0.057	0.076	0.077	0.126	0.133	5.5
Colon	0.055	0.056	0.073	0.076	0.128	0.131	2.5

3718  
3719  
3720  
3721  
3722  
3723  
3724  
3725  
3726  
3727  
3728

(292) The doses received in interplanetary missions have been evaluated by the same approach by a number of authors (i.e. Badhwar et al., 1994; Cucinotta and Durante, 2006a, Hoff et al., 2004, Zapp et al., 2002, Ballarini et al., 2006, Trovati et al., 2006). The FLUKA code associated with a Golem voxel phantom (Zankl et al., 2001) was used for an estimate of the doses inside a capsule-like enclosure with variable Al-wall thickness (Ferrari, 2007). It was supposed that particles of GCR impinge uniformly and isotropically on the spacecraft. As an example, Figure 6.12 shows calculated results in terms of absorbed dose rate to red bone marrow (RBM) as a function of the thickness of the Al wall. The contribution of the primary particles to the total dose rates is also shown in Figure 6.12.



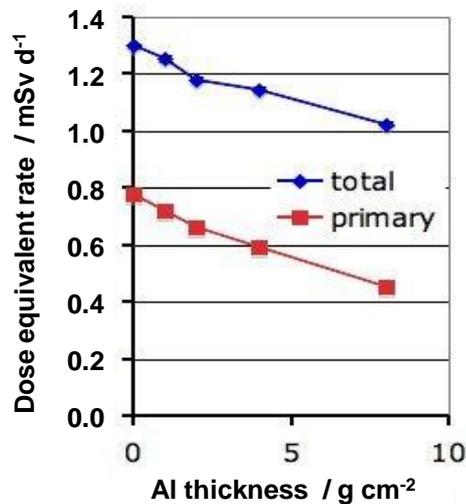
3729  
3730  
3731  
3732  
3733  
3734  
3735  
3736  
3737  
3738  
3739  
3740  
3741  
3742  
3743  
3744

Fig.6.12. Absorbed dose rate to red bone marrow (RBM) of a voxel phantom exposed to galactic cosmic radiation inside a capsule as a function of the Al wall thickness of the capsule (Ferrari, 2007).

(293) The calculated absorbed dose rate behind 1 g cm<sup>-2</sup> of Al resulted in 0.378 mGy/d, with 59% due to protons, 21% to alpha particles, 10% to ions of 2 < Z ≤ 8, 5% to ions of 8 < Z ≤ 14 and 5% to ions of Z > 14. The dose rate contributions of the various ion groups include those of primary ions and of all products generated in their interactions. The dose rate contribution of the uncollided particles was 0.206 mGy/d.

(294) Examples of direct evaluation of the organ dose equivalent rates from external radiation fluence rates of GCR without use of conversion coefficients are shown in Fig. 6.13. Similar to simulations already described above (see Fig. 6.12) the figure shows the dose equivalent rate to RBM as a function of the Al wall thickness of a capsule (Ferrari, 2007). It should be noted that for these data the tissue weighting factors recommended in the Publication 60 (ICRP, 1991) were applied.

3745



3746

Fig 6.13. Dose equivalent rate to the RBM of a voxel phantom inside a capsule exposed to galactic cosmic radiation as a function of the Al wall thickness of the capsule (data from Ferrari, 2007).

3747

3748

3749

3750

3751

3752

3753

3754

(295) The calculated RBM dose equivalent rate behind 1 g cm<sup>-2</sup> of Al is 1.26 mSv/d, where 31% are due to protons, 11% to alpha particles, 13% to ions of  $2 < Z \leq 8$ , 16% to ions of  $8 < Z \leq 14$ , 29% to ions of  $Z > 14$ . The contributions of the various ion groups include the primary ions contributions and those of all products generated in their interactions. The contribution of the uncollided particles was 0.72 mSv/d.

3755

3756

3757

3758

3759

3760

3761

3762

3763

(296) Several other authors used the method described above in order to determine the organ dose equivalent and effective dose equivalent received by the astronauts, especially for studying the shielding effect of the wall thickness of the capsule. Slaba et al. (Slaba et al., 2010) computed the protection quantities under both a galactic cosmic radiation and solar particle event environment. The spherical shell of aluminum was supposed isotropically irradiated and various computational models (CAM, CAF, MAX, FAX) have been used. Ballarini et al. (2006) and Trovati et al. (2006) calculated the GCR and SPE organ doses in deep space with different shielding by Monte Carlo simulations using the FLUKA code coupled to a mathematical model and a voxel phantom.

3764

3765

3766

3767

3768

3769

3770

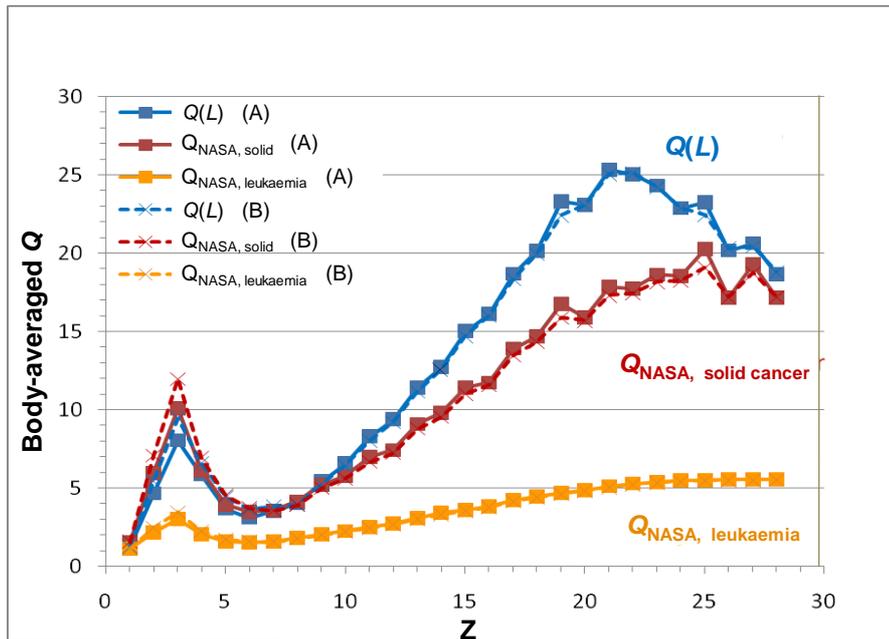
3771

3772

3773

3774

(297) Furthermore, it is of interest to which extent the values of dose equivalent in these radiation fields depend on the different concepts of the quality factor. As function of  $Z$  of the primary incident particle with an energy distribution as given in the GCR field, Fig. 6.14 shows a comparison of body-averaged mean quality factors using the  $Q(L)$  relationship and the recent NASA approach to quality factors based on particle track structure concepts and using different quality factor values for solid cancers and leukaemia. The calculations are made using the HZETRN code for solar minimum in the orbit of the International Space Station (ISS). Different calculations were carried out applying either a thin (5 g/cm<sup>2</sup>) or a thick (20 g/cm<sup>2</sup>) aluminum shielding. Differences between the different approaches occur mainly for low- and high- $Z$  particles.



3775

3776 Figure 6.14. Comparison of body-averaged quality factor values as a function of primary incident  
 3777 particle of charge  $Z$  calculated by applying either the ICRP  $Q(L)$  function or the NASA quality factors  
 3778 for solid cancers or leukaemia for thin or thick aluminum shielding conditions. (A)  $5 \text{ g/cm}^2$  Al  
 3779 shielding; (B)  $20 \text{ g/cm}^2$  Al shielding.

3780

3781

#### 3782 6.4 Assessment of doses in the body by measurements

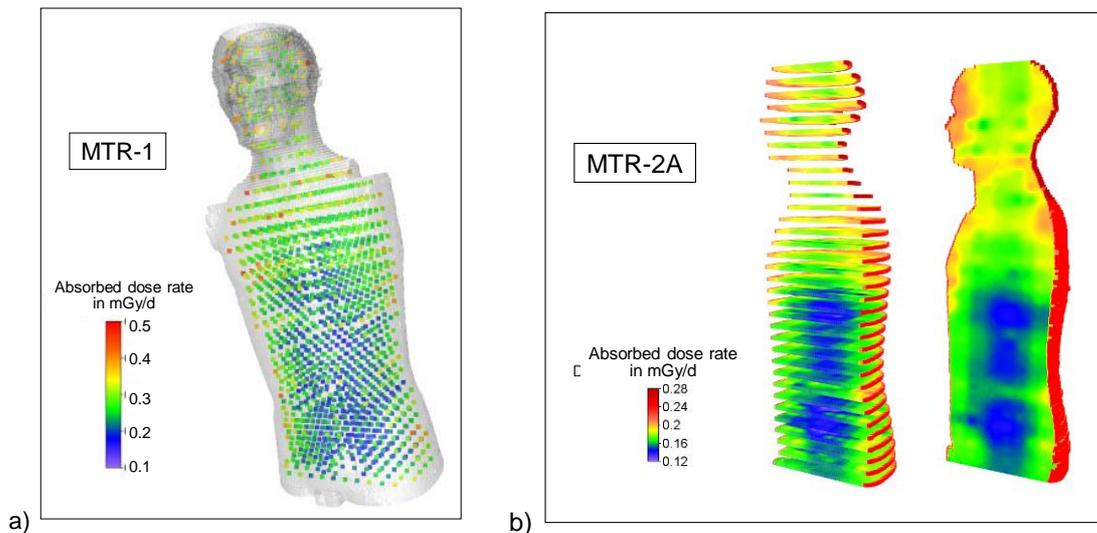
3783

3784 (298) Specific operational quantities for an assessment of dose in the body of astronauts in  
 3785 space have never been defined. Some properties of the radiation field, however, may provide  
 3786 some help in the determination of effective dose equivalents of astronauts. Firstly, there is a  
 3787 major component of very high-energy particles with long ranges in tissue in the field which  
 3788 strongly contribute to doses in the body. Secondly, the radiation incidence on the body may  
 3789 be nearly isotropic considering the situation that the astronauts are usually moving around  
 3790 and are not fixed in a special position for long times. Therefore, isotropic exposure of  
 3791 astronauts has been assumed in calculations resulting in a relatively homogeneous dose  
 3792 distribution within the body from GCR exposure (see Fig. 6.12 and 6.13). This, however, is  
 3793 not the case for low-penetrating radiation which mainly contributes to doses of the skin and  
 3794 other tissues near to the surface.

3795 (299) Any dose-measuring system, therefore, must have the ability to discriminate  
 3796 between strongly- and low-penetrating radiations. In addition, information about the  
 3797 distribution of absorbed dose in tissue in terms of lineal energy  $L$ ,  $D_L$ , is necessary for the  
 3798 assessment of equivalent dose in the body.

3799 (300) Measurement of dose distributions and organ doses in a human phantom in space  
 3800 have also be performed by the MATROSHKA collaboration (Reitz and Berger, 2005; Reitz  
 3801 et al., 2009) and exploited by members of the HAMLET collaboration (see [www.fp7-hamlet.eu](http://www.fp7-hamlet.eu)). A tissue-equivalent anthropomorphic phantom, called MATROSHKA, has been  
 3802 equipped with hundreds of dosimeters of different types, mostly TLD and NTD - and  
 3803 exposed in space during various ISS missions.  
 3804

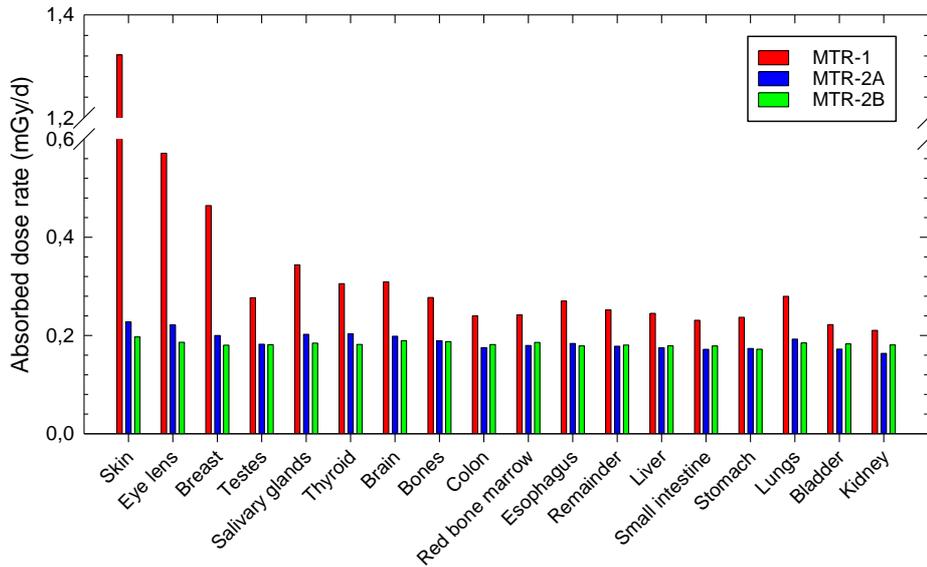
3805 (301) The MATROSHKA experiments provide detailed depth dose distributions in a  
 3806 human phantom exposed outside the ISS (MTR-1 mission) and in two positions inside the  
 3807 ISS at different shielding locations (MTR-2A, MTR-2B missions). Figure 6.15a shows the  
 3808 measured dose rate distribution in the MATROSHKA phantom for the MTR-1 mission based  
 3809 on TLD readings at 1598 locations inside the phantom. For measurements with the phantom  
 3810 outside the ISS, the absorbed dose rates range from 0.1 mGy/d to 0.5 mGy/d, with the highest  
 3811 dose at the phantom surface. For other missions inside the ISS due to the spacecraft shielding  
 3812 the absorbed dose rates are mostly restricted to a range from 0.13 mGy/d to 0.23 mGy/d.  
 3813  
 3814



3815 Fig. 15. (a) Measured absorbed dose rate distribution in the MATROSHKA phantom for the  
 3816 MTR-1 mission outside of the ISS based on TLD readings (Reitz, 2012).  
 3817 (b) Absorbed dose rate distribution in the MATROSHKA phantom for the MTR-A2 mission inside  
 3818 the ISS obtained by interpolation of point doses over the whole phantom volume (Reitz, 2012).  
 3819  
 3820

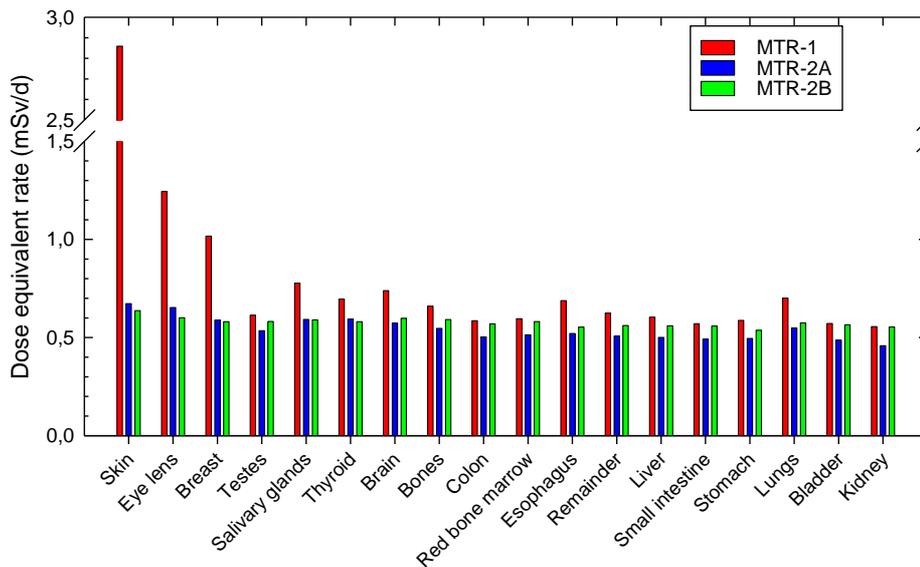
3821 (302) Computer tomography scans of the MATROSHKA phantom are taken in order to  
 3822 build up a voxel model called NUNDO (Numerical Rando). A computer program allows  
 3823 calculation of dose distributions by interpolation of point doses over the whole phantom  
 3824 volume (see Fig. 6.15b). For total absorbed dose and dose equivalent rate distributions and  
 3825 hence an assessment of mean absorbed dose rates and dose equivalent rates in organs and  
 3826 tissues, data measured by TLD and PNTD have been combined. The dose equivalent rate was  
 3827 calculated using quality factors as defined in ICRP Report 60 (ICRP, 1991).

3828 (303) The high dose gradient near to the skin for the MTR-1 missions is due to the high  
 3829 contribution of electrons and protons at the South Atlantic Anomaly. Inside the ISS this  
 3830 contribution is strongly reduced due to the shielding by the spacecraft (see Fig. 6.16 and  
 3831 6.17). The dose rates in the deeper lying organs are nearly constant due to the high energies  
 3832 and nearly isotropic fluence distribution of the GCR. For astronauts moving within the  
 3833 spacecraft, this is even more the case.



3834  
3835  
3836  
3837

Fig. 6.16 Mean absorbed dose rates in organs and tissues of the MATROSHKA phantom during different space missions at the ISS determined from measurements using TLD and PNTD (Reitz, 2012).



3838  
3839  
3840  
3841  
3842

Fig. 6.17. Mean dose equivalent rates in organs and tissues of the MATROSHKA phantom during different space missions at the ISS determined from measurements using TLD and PNTD (Reitz, 2012).

(304) The measured organ absorbed dose data were compared with corresponding values obtained from dose conversion coefficients multiplied with cosmic-radiation fluxes in the spacecraft calculated by PHITS using a simplified geometry of the ISS (Sato et al 2011). The agreement was found quite satisfactory in spite of some discrepancies observed for some organs, taking account of the various approximations introduced, in primis the hypothesis of isotropic irradiation.

(305) Similar data have been calculated for comparison with organ absorbed doses measured by the MATROSHKA experiment outside the ISS. As shown in Table 6.3 an

3851 acceptable agreement has been achieved.

3852

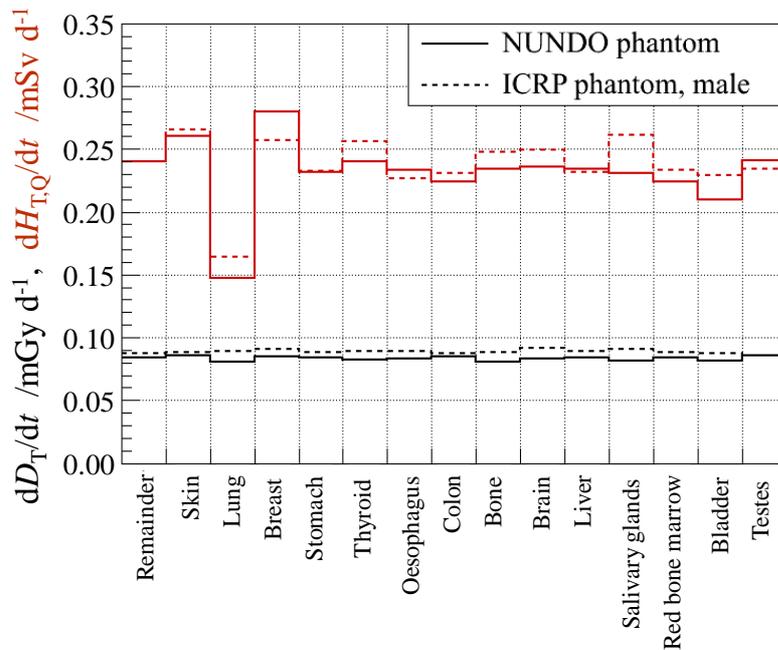
3853 Table 6.3. Organ absorbed dose rates measured by the MATROSHKA experiment outside ISS (Reitz  
 3854 et al., 2009) in comparison with corresponding calculated dose rates obtained from PHITS  
 3855 simulations (Sato et al., 2011).

Organ/Tissue	Measured absorbed dose rate mGy/d	Calculated absorbed dose rate mGy/d
Skin	0.944	1.814
Salivary glands	0.33	0.435
Breast	0.39	0.690
Lung	0.26	0.279
Oesophagus	0.24	0.250
Stomach	0.242	0.245

3856

3857 (306) The agreement is seen to be very good for the interior organs such as lung,  
 3858 oesophagus and stomach. The calculation, however, substantially overestimates the measured  
 3859 absorbed dose rates for the organs located near to the surface of the body, especially for the  
 3860 skin. That is probably due to the effect of a high yield of low-energy trapped protons and  
 3861 electrons encountered and also to some differences between phantoms and geometries of  
 3862 their surrounding environment employed in the calculation and experiment.

3863 (307) The accuracy of heavy ion transport codes was discussed in Section 5.3.1. With  
 3864 respect to the different anthropomorphic voxel models used the differences in the values of  
 3865 absorbed dose and dose equivalent of single organs and tissues calculated using the NUNDO  
 3866 model (MATROSHKA) or the ICRP reference voxel phantom are quite small as shown in  
 3867 Fig. 6.18 (Matthiä, 2012).



3868

3869 Fig. 6.18. Mean absorbed dose rate and dose equivalent rate in various organs and tissues  
 3870 calculated using the GEANT4 code and the NUNDO model and the ICRP reference phantom for  
 3871 galactic cosmic radiation (Matthiä, 2012).

3872

3873 **6.5 Biodosimetric measurements**

3874

3875 (308) Biodosimetric measurements offer an alternative to the measurement of individual  
3876 doses external to the body of an astronaut for the assessment of effective dose equivalent,  
3877 because of the very complex radiation field in the spacecraft which in addition is varying in  
3878 intensity and composition with time. Lymphocytes in the human body are circulating and  
3879 hence provide a target which is well distributed over the human body. In addition, the RBE-  
3880 LET dependence for total chromosomal exchanges during the first cell cycle is similar to the  
3881  $Q(L)$  relationship defined by the Commission (see Fig. 3.4) when using the premature  
3882 chromosome condensation method (Cucinotta et al., 2008).

3883 (309) The method has already been applied for estimating doses of astronauts in space  
3884 shuttle flights (George et al., 2001), at the MIR station (Yang et al., 1997, Fedorenko et al.,  
3885 2001) and at the ISS (Cucinotta et al., 2008).

3886 (310) In Table 6.4 doses obtained by physical and biological dosimetry for ISS missions  
3887 are compared, where the comparison includes biomarker results based on an individual or  
3888 population based calibration using gamma radiation (Cucinotta et al., 2008). Mission lengths  
3889 of 4 to 7 months occur for the different results described. Biomarker results are given in  
3890 terms of RBE-D (unit: mGy). This RBE-weighted dose value may be compared with values  
3891 of dose equivalent to organs or tissues (here with the dose equivalent of the skin) and  
3892 effective dose equivalent obtained from dosimeter readings and applying the  $Q(L)$  relation as  
3893 given by Publication 103 (ICRP, 2007). The overall agreement between the methods lends  
3894 confidence that the complex environment in space has been adequately characterized.  
3895

3896  
3897  
3898  
3899

Table 6.4. Data of mission doses of ISS astronauts obtained by biological dosimetry and by measurements with individual dosimeters (Cucinotta, 2008). The data of skin dose equivalent and effective dose equivalent are obtained by calculations adjusted to the individual's dosimeter readings.

Astro- naut	RBE·D mGy		Individual dose- meter reading  in mGy	Skin dose equivalent (calc.) mSv	Effective dose equivalent (calc.) mSv
	Individual based calibr.	Population based calibr.			
1	94 ±12	128 ±25	31	89.9	77.6
2	127 ±57	84 ±41	30	86.5	73.7
3	78 ±16	81 ±19	33	96.4	82.1
4	60 ±24	87 ±20	32	93.8	79.9
5	36 ±15	54 ±26	29	85.1	72.5
6	59 ±19	61 ±21	32	90.8	80.0
7	41 ±19	72 ±27	29	83.3	70.6
8	83 ±29	40 ±21	31	88.3	74.7
9	113 ±17	130 ±25	40	115	98.6
10	-	75 ±26	31	88.3	74.5
11	74 ±32	55 ±26	22	64.5	54.7
12	128 ±40	71 ±24	23	65.4	55.7
13	134 ±45	88 ±29	22	64.7	59.8
14	66 ±21	59 ±15	26	78.0	66.3
15	83 ±27	125 ±52	30	88.6	75.2
16	10 ±24	15 ±35	20	56.8	47.5
17	147 ±48	134 ±66	36	103.0	86.3
18	113 ±26	109 ±34	30	83.7	76.9
19	119 ±32	69 ±23	24	70.1	59.5
Mean*	85 ±38	81 ±32	28.9 ±4.9	83.8±14.1	71.9 ±12.0

3900  
3901  
3902  
3903  
3904

- Uncertainties listed are based on the data variation in the column and do not include measurement uncertainties.

3905

3906

## 7. OPERATIONAL RADIATION PROTECTION IN SPACE

3907

(311) The guiding principles used for radiation protection on Earth including justification, dose and risk limitation and ALARA are essential also for radiation protection during space travel. Operational radiation protection for astronauts in space, however, differs significantly from those requirements for external radiation exposure on Earth (see for example EC, 2009). On Earth, doses are generally well below annual limits; if constraints are approached, better estimates of effective dose are made from the results of measurements of operational quantities. For astronauts, doses are mainly based on the environmental situation in space, being typically about 1 mSv per day. Radiation protection for missions includes a large range of different measures which should all have the aim of reducing the radiation exposure of astronauts to a level where the health risks are acceptable (NCRP, 1989). In contrast to many of the other flight risks, effects from radiation exposure can have long latency times, and cancer and other detriments may occur long after a space mission has ended. However, as noted by the NCRP (NCRP, 1989, 1997) and discussed by others (Schimmerling 2010; Cucinotta et al., 2011b), the acceptance of radiation risks in spaceflight should consider many factors both dependent and independent of other flight risks.

(312) The operational radiation protection for each mission is to assess the radiation exposure of astronauts in space. This is prospectively performed by calculating organ and tissue doses weighted for radiation quality and, if needed also effective dose equivalent considering tissue weighting, for comparison with mission dose or risk limits related to stochastic and tissue reactions. After the mission, all available data should be combined, including results from measurements of area and individual instruments, to assess the doses and the probability of a radiation induced event.

(313) There may be defined special dose levels or constraints for short term exposure, annual exposure, and for an astronaut's career. The dose levels should apply to the assessed total detriment, to the lens of the eye, and to the skin. The total detriment is related to a probability of cancer risk. The dose constraints for tissue reactions are to avoid the occurrence of impairment during or after a mission. The complex nature of the radiation field in space requires continuous analysis of the environment by calculation, area monitoring of the astronauts' environment, and, where possible, the analysis of the results of active personal dosimeters, in order to meet action levels and the dose limits.

3938

### 7.1 Pre-flight mission design

3939

(314) The flight mission design needs to be carried out with the aim of reducing radiation exposures in line with ALARA. The application of ALARA requires that the space radiation environment is well known – outside and inside a spacecraft. This requires knowledge of the external radiation environment with its various components (see Chapter 2), of the spacecraft/habitat construction, and of the results of transport calculations modelling the internal radiation environment.

(315) The design of the spacecraft/habitat requires the use of radiation transport codes to compute dose equivalents. As described in Chapter 5 the computer codes may be one- or three-dimensional, deterministic or based on Monte Carlo (MC) methods. The construction of a spacecraft/habitat should include areas where the dose rates are lower than elsewhere in the spacecraft. There should be area monitors with visual displays of dose rates.

(316) To reduce uncertainties (see 7.5) further improvements are needed in the models of

3953 the galactic cosmic radiation, the solar energetic particles, and the trapped radiation to allow  
3954 the accurate forecasting of the fully integrated model of the radiation environment incident on  
3955 the spacecraft/ habitat. Models have been developed for each of the radiation components.  
3956 These models suffer several shortcomings: (i) the GCR models inadequately characterize the  
3957 solar cycle dependency and the scaling with heliocentric distance; (ii) the SPE models have  
3958 an incomplete understanding of the acceleration mechanism of the transport through the  
3959 heliosphere and a lack of prediction capability; (iii) the radiation belt models no longer reflect  
3960 the current state of the Earth's magnetosphere and lack the ability to properly describe the  
3961 dynamic behaviour of the trapped particles.

3962 (317) The forecast models require an improved understanding of the physical processes on  
3963 the Sun; the transport and acceleration of the solar wind through the heliosphere; the  
3964 processes in the magnetosphere (wave-particle interactions, source and loss processes, and  
3965 acceleration mechanisms). The space environment is highly variable on very different time  
3966 scales as a result of the variability of the Sun.

3967 (318) In general all aspects of the space environment are affected, but SPEs and CMEs are  
3968 the most dramatic radiation events and may constitute for several missions a serious hazard.  
3969 All the radiation components (including GCR and trapped) are also modulated by SPEs  
3970 (Forbush decreases in the GCR fluences, for example). An accurate prediction of SPEs and  
3971 CMEs would allow for a more effective approach in the shielding strategy. Forecasting  
3972 through real time observation and propagation modelling should be improved.

3973 (319) Astronauts are particularly vulnerable during EVAs, when they should be monitored  
3974 with active dosimeters. Real-time space weather predictions and remote satellite and areas  
3975 instrumentation will assist in EVA activity. The real-time measurements will provide  
3976 guidance, and can suggest changes in mission scheduling to maintain the total risk below  
3977 predefined limits.

3978 (320) The development of shielding requirements and strategies is important for the  
3979 achievement of ALARA. The reduction in exposure can be made by reducing the exposure  
3980 time or by passive shielding. Passive shielding may cause an increased risk by increasing the  
3981 dose equivalent from any generated secondary particles, projectile and target fragments  
3982 (including neutrons). For shielding effectiveness, the use of a shielding material with a low  
3983 mean atomic mass is generally better.

3984 (321) Information about radiation transport codes (see Chapter 5) is important and the  
3985 strengths and weaknesses of the codes should be investigated in detail via benchmarking  
3986 procedures against experimental data, including data obtained with advanced  
3987 anthropomorphic phantoms exposed at accelerators. The physics at the basis of the particle  
3988 transport and cross sectional data tables must also be improved to further develop the codes.

3989

## 3990 **7.2 Area monitoring**

3991

3992 (322) Area monitors at well selected locations in the spacecraft can determine the  
3993 environmental conditions and are appropriate for an immediate warning about changing  
3994 exposure conditions.

3995 (323) Instruments are required to determine the radiation environment in terms of particle  
3996 type, fluence rate, energy, and direction distributions and, in some instances, dose quantities.  
3997 Dose quantities used to assess doses to astronauts and to monitor radiation at a number of  
3998 locations should give values of the dose rate. These data can be used to implement ALARA.  
3999 Area monitors at well selected locations in the spacecraft can be appropriate for immediate  
4000 warning about changing exposure conditions. This can be of importance before or during

4001 SPEs, electron belt enhancements, and EVA. Real-time calibration of instruments should be  
4002 explored.

4003 (324) If appropriately designed and accurately calibrated instruments are used, it may be  
4004 that a quantity measured in fixed position in a spacecraft can, along with appropriate  
4005 occupancy data, provide the basis for an adequate assessment of doses to an astronaut or of  
4006 doses to the local skin or the extremities. While in principle this procedure may be applicable  
4007 to astronauts in space, the large variation of the radiation field in intensity and composition of  
4008 radiation types inside a spacecraft, and its variation with time together with the flexibility of  
4009 the astronaut's position, has the consequence that area monitoring is not sufficient to  
4010 completely substitute individual monitoring, especially considering the high individual doses  
4011 to astronauts and the interest in providing a basis for individual risk estimates.

4012

### 4013 **7.3 Individual monitoring**

4014

4015 (325) The assessment of organ and tissue absorbed doses, together with radiation quality  
4016 factors, of individual astronauts can be accomplished by calculations using anthropomorphic  
4017 phantoms or by measurements using personal dosimeters (see Chapter 6).

4018 (326) One method of calculation of organ and tissue absorbed doses and radiation quality  
4019 factors does so directly for a standard male or female phantom for various locations in a  
4020 spacecraft with appropriate shielding. The phantoms can be adjusted to approximate a  
4021 particular astronaut. The results are normalized using readings of area monitors and personal  
4022 dosimeters. Another method requires knowledge of particle fluence and applies conversion  
4023 coefficients from particle type, energy and direction distribution of fluence to organ and  
4024 tissue absorbed doses and corresponding radiation quality factors for uniform irradiation of  
4025 an astronaut.

4026 (327) Individual monitoring is mostly performed using personal dosimeters worn at the  
4027 surface of the body. The personal dosimeter serves as the dosimeter of record. A single  
4028 dosimeter system is, however, not sufficient to provide an assessment of the absorbed dose at  
4029 the surface of the body weighted by radiation quality. The broad range of different types of  
4030 particle requires at minimum two detectors, one sensitive to low-LET radiation and the other  
4031 to high-LET radiation. Because of a possible anisotropy of the exposure in the spacecraft due  
4032 to variations of shielding properties, it may be useful to wear more than one dosimeter. Also  
4033 care needs to be taken regarding low-energy electrons and particles which are stopped in the  
4034 skin and, therefore, contribute only marginally to organ doses other than the skin dose, but  
4035 may induce a large signal in an external dosimeter.

4036 (328) The use of adequate active personal radiation detectors would enable improved  
4037 characterization (input energy, nuclear abundance, fluence rate, direction) of the radiation  
4038 field both on the body of the astronaut as well as in the environment. The measurement of  
4039 dose-rate can contribute directly to ALARA.

4040 (329) The results of bio-marker measurements can be additionally used to estimate  
4041 individual radiation exposure. The determinations can be collaborative and provide all the  
4042 experimental radiation information and relative codes needed to achieve an efficient risk  
4043 assessment, minimizing the uncertainties in the final risk estimates.

4044

### 4045 **7.4 Dose recording**

4046

4047 (330) Astronauts in space are exceptionally exposed and the assessment of their individual  
4048 doses should be part of the radiation protection programme for space flights. Astronauts

4049 should be informed of their doses and risk assessments as soon as possible. Their doses  
4050 should be regularly registered and a long term registry for all missions should be maintained.

4051 (331) The dose record is the formal statement of the crew member's exposure and should  
4052 be kept as a confidential medical record. The record should contain the history of the  
4053 exposure and all the calculation and experimental results, including all information on the  
4054 particle type energy and direction distributions of fluence; computer codes; conversion  
4055 coefficients and weighting factors; area monitor, personal dosimeter, and biomarker results

4056

## 4057 **7.5 Consideration of uncertainties**

4058

4059 (332) There are large uncertainties in projecting cancer risks and the risks of other late  
4060 effects from ionising radiation on Earth. Space radiation carries additional considerations,  
4061 which further increase uncertainties. As radiation workers approach a significant fraction of  
4062 exposure limits, the calculations of uncertainty bounds is needed because exposures leading  
4063 to acceptable levels of risks may no longer be confidently avoided when the uncertainties are  
4064 considered.

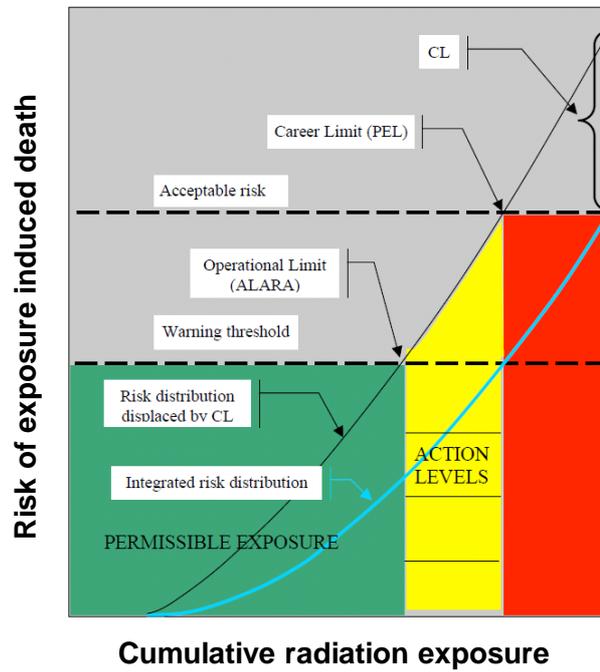
4065 (333) It is important to provide all the information needed to establish the uncertainties of  
4066 the organ risk estimates. The overall uncertainty will be reduced by improvements in  
4067 modelling of radiation sources and the transport of the field through the spacecraft or habitat;  
4068 improved accuracy of radiation transport codes; improved accuracy of radiation monitoring;  
4069 better estimation of dose and dose-rate effectiveness factor; better determination of radiation  
4070 quality factors; better understanding of the statistics and dosimetry of epidemiological data.

4071 (334) A full risk model may need to be developed using real time radiation readings, space  
4072 weather forecasts, and risk assessments. This can allow changes to the mission, with an  
4073 assessment of uncertainties, whilst maintaining the total risk below predefined limits.

4074 (335) Uncertainties in estimates of exposures and the relationship between exposure and  
4075 risk are a major concern for operational radiation protection in space due to the types of  
4076 radiation, which includes heavy ions and neutrons, and the higher exposure levels, which  
4077 may approach exposure and risk limits. Figure 7.1 illustrates schematically an operational  
4078 approach where an evaluation of uncertainties is included in the radiation protection approach  
4079 (Schimmerling, 2010). Obviously, "acceptable" levels of cumulative exposure depend on the  
4080 uncertainty and hence reduction of uncertainties is seen to be an important task for mission  
4081 planning. Methods to estimate uncertainties in exposure and risks are described elsewhere  
4082 (Cucinotta et al., 2011; NCRP 2006)

4083

4084



4085  
4086  
4087  
4088  
4089  
4090

Fig. 7.1. Schematic view of risk management with ALARA and large uncertainties. The risk distribution function versus cumulative radiation exposure with and without considering uncertainties (based on 95% confidence limit (CL)) is displaced. ALARA practices and action levels for an “acceptable” level of risk and permissible exposure limit (PEL) are also shown (Schimmerling, 2010).

4091

4092 **8. CONCLUSIONS**

4093

4094 (336) Astronauts in space are living under extraordinarily different environmental  
4095 conditions than on Earth. The radiation environment in space needs specific attention and  
4096 considerations regarding the exposure of astronauts and the limitation of such exposures to a  
4097 level where the health risks are comparable to other risks during space missions.

4098 (337) The number of astronauts undergoing missions in space is very small compared to  
4099 the number of occupationally exposed persons on Earth. In long-term missions, however,  
4100 doses to the astronauts are generally higher than those at other working places on Earth.  
4101 Hence a more individually based dose and risk assessment should be performed for  
4102 astronauts in space compared to persons on Earth, where these exposures are usually much  
4103 less than the limits defined for occupationally exposed persons.

4104 (338) The following points are specifically mentioned:

4105 • The primary radiation field in space is complex and includes electrons, protons,  
4106  $\alpha$ particles and heavy ions up to very high energies. Additional secondary radiation  
4107 (e.g.  $\gamma$ -radiation, muons, neutrons and pions) is produced by interactions in the  
4108 materials of a spacecraft, its equipment, and in the astronauts.

4109 • The physics at the basis of the particle transport and cross sectional data tables must  
4110 be improved to further develop the computational methods. There is a lack of  
4111 experimental cross-section data for light fragments and neutrons. Codes need to be  
4112 improved to treat all primary and secondary cascades including photons, protons, light  
4113 ions, heavy ions, mesons and electromagnetic cascades. The nuclear interaction  
4114 database needs to be updated, especially for neutrons and light ions.

4115 • The simple concept of considering the differences in radiobiological effectiveness by  
4116 radiation weighting factors,  $w_R$ , e.g. a constant radiation weighting factor of 20 for all  
4117 heavy ions of all energies, is not appropriate for dosimetry in space and the quality  
4118 factor ( $Q$ ) is applied for the definition of the quantity dose equivalent in an organ or  
4119 tissue of the human body.

4120 • The basis for risk assessments for the astronauts are the dose equivalents in organs  
4121 and tissues of adult males and females,  $H_{T,Q}^M$  and  $H_{T,Q}^F$ , which are based on mean  
4122 absorbed doses,  $D_T$ , and mean quality factors in the corresponding organs or tissues,  
4123  $Q_T$ .

4124 • Conversion coefficients which relate particle fluence to mean absorbed doses in  
4125 organs and tissues of the human body and corresponding mean quality factors for all  
4126 types of radiation present in space, are an important data base for the assessment of  
4127 the exposure of astronauts. For the estimation of radiation risks of astronauts based on  
4128 mean absorbed doses in the body, an assessment of the uncertainty of  $D_T$  and  $Q_T$   
4129 would be very useful.

4130 • The concept of operational dose quantities for area monitoring of external exposure  
4131 and an assessment of effective dose is not applicable because many different types of  
4132 particles are involved with very high energies. Instead the measurement and  
4133 determination of particle fluence and its distribution in energy and direction is more  
4134 important and provides a basis for an assessment of doses.

4135 • A broad range of instrumentation has been specifically designed for fluence and dose  
4136 measurements in space. Obviously a single instrument is not sufficient for a  
4137 determination of all particle fluences and their energy distributions and for an

- 4138 assessment of organ doses in the human body. Particle spectrometers, individual  
4139 dosimeters and specific instruments measuring the low-penetrating radiation on the  
4140 body of an astronaut are needed.
- 4141 • While passive individual dosimeters are generally appropriate to measure mission  
4142 doses integrated over the flight time, active detector systems allow the measurement  
4143 of fluctuations in the exposure and also the inclusion of warning capabilities, e.g. in  
4144 cases of a large SPE.
  - 4145 • The use of biomarkers of health effects is an attractive supplement to physical  
4146 dosimetry. Biomarkers from blood samples from astronauts can be used to assess  
4147 individual mission doses. In addition, biomarkers may serve for an individual risk  
4148 assessment or an indication for the presence of a disease. Biodosimetry is routinely  
4149 performed on the small population of astronauts involved in International Space  
4150 Station (ISS) missions, and would likely be used in future space missions. To be  
4151 useful as a biodosimetry method, the radiation quality dependence of the response of  
4152 the specific assay need to be known.
  - 4153 • The exposure of astronauts in space is a special case of environmental exposure quite  
4154 different from that on Earth. In space missions, especially in long-term interplanetary  
4155 missions, their exposure will be higher than the annual limits recommended for  
4156 exposure of workers on Earth. Although astronauts are exposed to ionizing radiation  
4157 during their occupational activities they are usually not classified as being  
4158 occupationally exposed in the sense of the ICRP system for radiation protection. Thus,  
4159 for a specific mission planned, reference levels for risks or doses may be selected at  
4160 appropriate levels and no dose limits may be applied for a given mission.
- 4161  
4162

4163

4164 **REFERENCES:**

4165

4166 Azimi-Garakani, D., Wernli, C., 1991. Response and background study of various PADC materials.  
4167 Int. J. Radiat. Appl. Instr. Part D. Nucl. Tracks and Radiat. Meas. 19 (1-4)445-448

4168

4169 Agosteo, S., Colautti, P., Fazzi, A. et al., 2006. A solid state microdosimeter based on a monolithic  
4170 silicon telescope. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 122, 382-386

4171

4172 Agostinelli, S., Allison, J., Amako, K. et al., 2003. GEANT4 – a simulation toolkit. Nucl. Instr. Meth.  
4173 in Phys. Res. A 506 (3), 250-303.

4174

4175 Allison J., Amako, K., Apostolakis, J. et al., 2006. Geant4 developments and applications. IEEE  
4176 Transactions on Nucl. Sc. 53 (1), 270-278.

4177

4178 Allkofer, O.C., 1975. Introduction to Cosmic Radiation, Buchreihe der Atomenergie, Bd. 10, Verlag  
4179 Karl Thiemig, München.

4180

4181 Alpen, E.L., Powers-Risius, P., Curtis, S.B., DeGuzman, R., 1993. Tumorigenic potential of high-Z,  
4182 high-LET charged particle radiations. Radiat. Res. 88, 132-143.

4183

4184 Alsmiller, R.G., JR., Irving, D.C., Kinney, W.E., Moran H.S., 1965. The Validity of the Straighthead  
4185 Approximation in Space Vehicle Shielding Design Studies. Second Symposium on Protection  
4186 Against Radiations in Space, Arthur Reetz, Jr., ed., NASA SP-71, 177-181.

4187

4188 Andersen et al., 2004. The FLUKA code for space applications: recent developments. Adv. Space  
4189 Res. 34 (6), 1302-1310.

4190

4191 Apáthy, I., Deme, S., Fehér, I. et al., 2002. Dose measurements in space by the Hungarian Pille TLD  
4192 system. Radiat. Meas. 35, 381-391.

4193

4194 Apáthy, I., Akatov, Y.A., Arkhangelsky, V.V. et al., 2007. TL dose measurements on board the  
4195 Russian segment of the ISS by the “Pille” system during Expedition-8, -9 and -10. Acta  
4196 Astronaut. 60, 322-328.

4197

4198 Atwell, W., 1994. Anatomical models for space radiation application- An Overview. Adv. Space Res.  
4199 415-422.

4200

4201 Badhwar G. D., 1997. The radiation environment in low earth orbit. Radiat. Res. 148, S3-S10.

4202

4203 Badhwar, G. D., Atwell, W., Badavi, F. F. et al., 2002. Space radiation absorbed dose distribution in a  
4204 human phantom. Radiat. Res. 157, 76–91.

4205

4206 Badhwar, G.D., Cucinotta, F.A., 2000. A Comparison on Depth Dependence of Dose and Linear  
4207 Energy Transfer Spectra in Aluminum and Polyethylene. Radiat. Res. 153, 1-8.

4208

4209 Badhwar, G.D., Cucinotta, F.A., Braby, L.A., Konradi, A., 1994. Measurements on the Shuttle of the  
4210 LET spectra of galactic cosmic radiation and comparison with the radiation transport model.  
4211 Radiat. Res. 139, 344–351.

4212

4213 Badhwar, G.D, O’Neill, P.M., 1992. An Improved Model of GCR for Space Exploration Missions.  
4214 Nucl. Tracks Radiat. Meas. 20, 403-410.

- 4215  
4216 Badhwar, G.D., Patel, J. U., Cucinotta, F.A., Wilson, J.W., 1995. Measurements of Secondary  
4217 Particle Energy Spectrum in the Space Shuttle. *Radiat. Meas.* 24, 129-138.  
4218  
4219 Badhwar, G.D., Atwell, W., Reitz, G., Beaujean, R., Heinrich, W., 2002. Radiation measurements on  
4220 the Mir Orbital Station. *Radiat. Meas.* 35(5), 393-422.  
4221  
4222 Bahadori, A.A., Van Baalen, M., Shavers, M.R. et al., 2011. Effect of anatomical modeling on space  
4223 radiation dose estimates: A comparison of doses for NASA phantoms and the 5<sup>th</sup>, 50<sup>th</sup>, and  
4224 95<sup>th</sup> percentile male and female astronauts. *Phys Med Biol* 56, 1671-1694.  
4225  
4226 Bahadori, A.A., Van Baalen, M., Shavers, M.R. et al., 2012. Dosimetric impacts of microgravity: an  
4227 analysis of 5<sup>th</sup>, 50<sup>th</sup>, and 95<sup>th</sup> percentile male and female astronauts. *Phys Med Biol.* 57,  
4228 1047-1070.  
4229  
4230 Ballarini, F. et al., 2004. Nuclear models in FLUKA: present capabilities, open problems and future  
4231 improvements. SLAC-PUB-10813, SLAC, Stanford, USA.  
4232  
4233 Ballarini, F., Battistoni, G., Cerutti, F. et al. 2006. GCR and SPE organ doses in deep space with  
4234 different shielding: Monte Carlo simulations based on the FLUKA code coupled to  
4235 anthropomorphic phantoms, *Adv. Space Res.* 37(9), 1791-1797.  
4236  
4237 Barkas, W.H., 1963. Nuclear Research Emulsions, Vol. I. Academic Press, New York.  
4238  
4239 Bartlett, D.T., Hager, L.G., Tanner, R.J., 2006. Results of measurements on shuttle missions to the ISS of  
4240 the neutron component of the radiation field. *Adv. Space Res.* 37, 1668–1671.  
4241  
4242 Battistoni, Muraro, S., Sala, P.R., Cerutti, F., Ferrari, A., Roesler, S., Fasso, A., Ranft, J., 2007. The  
4243 FLUKA code: Description and benchmarking" Proceedings of the Hadronic Shower Simulation  
4244 Workshop 2006 at Fermilab, M. Albrow, R. Raja eds., AIP Conference Proceeding 896, 31-49,  
4245 (2007).  
4246  
4247 Beaujean, R., Kopp, J., Burmeister, S. *et al.*, 2002. Dosimetry inside MIR station using a silicon  
4248 detector telescope (DOSTEL), *Radiat. Meas.* 35, 433–438.  
4249  
4250 Benghin, V.V., 2008. On-board predicting algorithm of radiation exposure for the International Space  
4251 Station radiation monitoring system. *J. Atmos. Sol.-Terr. Phys.* 70, 675-679  
4252  
4253 Benton, E.R., Benton, E.V., 2001. Space radiation dosimetry in low-Earth orbit and beyond. *Nucl.*  
4254 *Instr. Meth. B* 184(1-2), 255-294.  
4255  
4256 Benton, E.V., Badhwar, G.D. (edt.), 2001. Prediction and measurements of secondary neutrons in  
4257 space. *Radiat. Measurement.* 33 (3), 227-392  
4258  
4259 Benton, E.R., Frank, A.L., Benton, E.V., 2000. TLD efficiency of <sup>7</sup>LiF for doses deposited by high-  
4260 LET particles. *Radiat. Measurement.* 32 (3), 211-214  
4261  
4262 Berger, T., Hajek, M., Fugger, M. et al., 2006. Efficiency corrected dose verification with  
4263 thermoluminescence dosimeters in heavy ion beams, *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 120, 361–364.  
4264  
4265 Bernabeu, J., Casanova, I., 2007. Moon surface radiation environment analysis for February 1956  
4266 solar event conditions. *Adv. Space Res.* 42 (12), 1906-1912.

- 4266  
4267 Bichsel, H., 1992. Stopping Power and Ranges of Fast Ions in Heavy Elements. Phys. Rev. A. 46,  
4268 5761-5773.  
4269
- 4270 Bigbee, W.L., , W.,C. et al., 1998. Human in vivo somatic mutation measured at two loci: individuals  
4271 with stable elevated background erythrocyte glycophorin A (*gpa*) variant frequencies exhibit  
4272 normal T-lymphocyte *hprt* mutant frequencies. Mutation Research/ Fundamental and Molecular  
4273 Mechanisms of Mutagenesis 397 (2), 119-136.  
4274
- 4275 Billings, M.P., Yucker, W.R., 1973. The computerized anatomical man (CAM) model. Summary  
4276 Final Report, MDC-G4655, McDonnell Douglas Company, Huntington Beach, CA.  
4277
- 4278 Bilski, P. , Berger, T., Hajek, M., Reitz, G., (2011). Comparison of the response of various TLDs to  
4279 cosmic radiation and ion beams: Current results of the HAMLET project. Radiat. Meas.,  
4280 doi:10.1016/j.radmeas.2011.03.023).  
4281
- 4282 Blakely, W.F., Miller, A.C., Grace, M.B. et al., 2003. Radiation biodosimetry: Applications for  
4283 spaceflight. Adv. Space Res. 31 (6), 1487-1493.  
4284
- 4285 Boberg, P.R., Adams, J.H., Beaujean, N.L., et al., 1993. The mean charge state of solar energetic  
4286 oxygen at 10 MeV/nucleon. In: Proceedings of 23th ICRC, Vol. 3, 396-399.  
4287
- 4288 Boschung, M., Fiechtner, A., Mayer, S., Wernli, C., 2008. Field calibration and comparison of  
4289 personal neutron dosimeter designs based on CR-39 for the use around high-energy accelerators.  
4290 Radiat. Meas. 43 (2-6), 1081-1084.  
4291
- 4292 Brandt, W., Ritchie, H.R., 1974. Primary Processes in the Physical Stage. Physical Mechanisms in  
4293 Radiation Biology, R.D. Cooper, and R. Woods. Eds. Tech. Info. Center, US, Atomic Energy  
4294 Commission, 20-29.  
4295
- 4296 Braun, H., Christl, M., Rahmstorf, S. et al., 2005. Possible solar origin of the 1470 year glacial  
4297 climate cycle demonstrated in a coupled model. Nature 438, 208-211.  
4298
- 4299 Brechtmann, C., Heinrich, W., 1988. Fragmentation Cross Sections of <sup>32</sup>S at 0.7, 1.2, and 200  
4300 GeV/nucleon. Z.Phys. A331, 463-472.  
4301
- 4302 Brenner, D.J., Hall, E.J., 1992. Commentary 2 to Cox and Little: radiation-induced oncogenic  
4303 transformation: the interplay between dose, dose protraction, and radiation quality. Adv.  
4304 Radiat. Biol. 16, 167-79.  
4305
- 4306 Brooks, A.L., 1999. Biomarkers of exposure, sensitivity, and disease. Int. J. Radiat. Biol. **75**, 1481-  
4307 1503.  
4308
- 4309 Caffrey, J.A., Hamby, D.M., 2011. A review of instruments and methods for dosimetry in space. Adv.  
4310 Space Res. 47 (4), 563-574.  
4311
- 4312 Carlsson, J., Rosander, K., 1973. Effects of Multiple Scattering on Proton Beams in Radiotherapy.  
4313 Phys. Med. Biol. 18, 633-640.  
4314
- 4315 Casolino, M., Altamura, F., Minori, M. et al., 2007. The Altcriss project on board the International  
4316 Space Station. Adv. Space Res. 40, 1746-1753.  
4317

- 4318 Charara, Y.M., Townsend, L.W., Gabriel, T.A. et al., 2008. HETC-HEDS Code Validation Using  
4319 Laboratory Beam Energy Loss Spectra Data. IEEE Trans. Nucl. Sci. 55 (6), 3164-3168  
4320
- 4321 Chen, J., 2001. Physics of coronal mass ejections: a new paradigm of solar eruption. Space Science  
4322 Reviews 95, 165-190.  
4323
- 4324 Cloudsley, M.S., Wilson, J.W., Kim, M.Y. et al., 2000. Neutron Environment on the Martian Surface.  
4325 Physica Medica XVII, 94-97.  
4326
- 4327 Cornforth, M.N., 2001. Analyzing radiation-induced complex chromosome rearrangements by  
4328 combinatorial painting. Radiat. Res. 155, 643-659.  
4329
- 4330 Compton, A.H., 1936. Recent developments in cosmic rays. Rev. Sci. Instrum. 7, 71-82  
4331
- 4332 Cucinotta, F.A., Durante, M., 2006a. Cancer risk from exposure to galactic cosmic rays: implications  
4333 for space exploration by human beings. Lancet Oncol. 7(5) 431-5.  
4334
- 4335 Cucinotta, F.A., Hu, S., Schwadron, N.A. et al., 2011b. Space radiation risk limits and Earth-Moon-  
4336 Mars environmental models. Space Weather 8.  
4337
- 4338 Cucinotta, F.A., Kim, M. Y., Chapell, L.J., 2011a. Space Radiation Cancer Risk Projections and  
4339 Uncertainties – 2010. NASA/TP-2011-216155  
4340
- 4341 Cucinotta, F.A., Kim, M.Y., Schneider, S.I., and Hassler, D.M., 2007. Description of light ion  
4342 production cross sections and fluxes on the Mars surface using the QMSFRG model. Radiat.  
4343 Environ. Biophys. 46, 101-106.  
4344
- 4345 Cucinotta, F.A., Kim, M.Y., Willingham, V., George. K.A., 2008. Physical and biological organ  
4346 dosimetry analysis for International Space Station Astronauts. Radiat. Res. 170 (1), 127-138.  
4347
- 4348 Cucinotta, .F.A., Nikjoo, H., Goodhead, D.T., 2000. Model of the radial distribution of energy  
4349 imparted in nanometer volumes from HZE particles. Radiat Res. 153, 459-468.  
4350
- 4351 Cucinotta, F.A. et al., 1997. Computational Procedures and Data-Base Development. In: NASA  
4352 Workshop on Shielding Strategies for Human Space Exploration. Eds.: Wilson J.W., Miller J.,  
4353 Konradi A., and Cucinotta F.A., NASA CP-3360.  
4354
- 4355 Cucinotta, F.A., Schimmerling, W., Peterson, L.E. et al., 2001b. Space Radiation Cancer Risks and  
4356 Uncertainties for Mars Missions. Radiat. Res. 156, 682-688.  
4357
- 4358 Cucinotta, F. A., Schimmerling, W., Wilson, J. W., Peterson, L. E., Badhwar, G. D., Saganti, P. B.,  
4359 Dicello, J. F., 2001a. Space radiation cancer risk projections for explorative missions: uncertainty  
4360 reduction and mitigation, NASA JSC Document (JSC-29295), NASA Washington DC.  
4361
- 4362 Cucinotta, F.A., Townsend, L.W., Wilson, J.W. et al. 1995. Light Ion Component of the Galactic  
4363 Cosmic Rays: Nuclear Interactions and Transport Theory. Adv. Space Res. 17, 77-86.  
4364
- 4365 Cucinotta, F.A., Wilson, J.W., Saganti, P. et al., 2002. Physics of the Isotopic Dependence of GCR  
4366 Fluence Behind Shielding. NASA TP-2003-210792.  
4367

- 4368 Cucinotta, F.A., Wilson, J.W., Shinn, J.L. et al., 1996. Effects of Target Fragmentation on Evaluation  
4369 of LET Spectra From Space Radiations: Implications for Space Radiation Protection Studies.  
4370 Radiat. Meas. 26, 923-934.  
4371
- 4372 Cucinotta, F.A., Wilson, J.W., Tripathi, R.K., Townsend, L.W., 1998. Microscopic Fragmentation  
4373 Model for Galactic Cosmic Ray Studies. Adv. in Space Res. 22, 533-537.  
4374
- 4375 Cucinotta, F.A., Wilson, J.W., Williams, J.R. et al., 2000b. Analysis of Mir-18 results for physical  
4376 and biological dosimetry: Radiation shielding effectiveness in LEO. Radiat. Meas. 132, 181-191.  
4377
- 4378 Cummings, J.R., Binns, W.R., Garrand, M.H. et al., 1990. Determination of the Cross Sections for the  
4379 Production of Fragments with Relativistic Nucleus-Nucleus Interactions I. Measurements. Phys.  
4380 Rev. C 42, 2508-2529.  
4381
- 4382 Dachev, T., Atwell, W., Semones, E. Et al., 2006. B., Observations of the SAA radiation distribution  
4383 by Liulin-E094 instrument on ISS. Adv. Space Res. 37, 1672-1677.  
4384
- 4385 Dachev, T., Tomov, B., Matviichuk, Y. et al., 2002. Calibration results obtained with Liulin-4 type  
4386 dosimeters. Adv. Space Res. 30 (4), 917-925.  
4387
- 4388 Dettmann, J., Reitz, G., Gianfiglio, G., 2007. MATROSHKA—The first ESA external payload on the  
4389 International Space Station. Acta Astronaut. 60, 17-23.  
4390
- 4391
- 4392 Doke, T., Hayashi, T., Kikuchi, J. et al., 2001. Measurements of LET-distribution, dose equivalent  
4393 and quality factor with the RRMD-III on the Space Shuttle Missions STS-84, -89 and -91. Radiat  
4394 Meas. 33(3), 373-87.  
4395
- 4396 Durante, M., and Cucinotta, F.A., 2011. The physical basis for radiation protection in space. Rev.  
4397 Mod. Phys. 83, 1245–1281.  
4398
- 4399 EC, 2009. Technical Recommendations for Monitoring Individuals Occupationally Exposed to  
4400 External Radiation. Report Radiation Protection 160 of the European Radiation Dosimetry  
4401 Group, WG2. European Commission, Luxembourg.  
4402
- 4403 Edwards, A.A. et al., 2005. Review of translocations detected by FISH for retrospective biological  
4404 dosimetry applications. Radiat. Prot. Dosim. 113, 396-402.  
4405
- 4406 Ersmark, T., Carlson, P., Daly, E. et al., 2007. Geant4 Monte Carlo simulations of the belt proton  
4407 radiation environment on board the International Space Station/Columbus. IEEE Trans. Nucl.  
4408 Sci. 54 (4), 1444-1453.  
4409
- 4410 Evans, H.D.R., Bühler, P., Hajdas, W. et al., 2008. Results from the ESA SREM monitors and  
4411 comparison with existing radiation belt models. Adv. Space Res. 42, 1527-1537  
4412
- 4413 Facius, R., Reitz, G., 2007. Space weather impacts on space radiation protection. In: Space Weather  
4414 Physics and Effects. Eds. Bothmer, V. and Daglis, I.A. Springer-Praxis Books in Environmental  
4415 Sciences, ISBN:3-540-23907-3  
4416
- 4417 Failla, G., Henshaw, P., 1931. The relative biological effectiveness of x rays and gamma-rays.  
4418 Radiology 17, 1-43.  
4419

- 4420 Fano, U., 1963. Penetration of Protons, Alpha Particles, and Mesons. Annual Review of Nucler  
4421 Science, Vol. 13, Emilio Segre, ed. 1-66.  
4422
- 4423 Fasso, A., Ferrari, A., Ranft, J., Sala, P.R., 2005. FLUKA: a multi-particle transport code. CERN-  
4424 2005-10, INFN/TC\_05/11, SLAC-R-773  
4425
- 4426 Fattibene, P., Callens, F., 2010. EPR dosimetry with tooth enamel: A review. Appl. Radiat. Isot.  
4427 68(11), 2033-116.  
4428
- 4429 Fedorenko, B., Druzhinin, S., Yudaeva, L. et al., 2001. Cytogenetic studies of blood lymphocytes  
4430 from cosmonauts after long-term space flights on Mir station. Adv. Space Res. 27, 355-359  
4431
- 4432 Fermi, E., 1940. Summer Lectures, University of Chicago.  
4433
- 4434 Ferrari, A., 2007. Fragmentation in human tissue; from cancer therapy to space missions, paper  
4435 presented at NUFRA2007, 26 September 2007.  
4436
- 4437 Ferrari, A., Ranft, J., Sala, P.R., 2001. The FLUKA radiation transport code and its use for space.  
4438 Proceedings of the 1st Intern. Workshop on Space Radiation Research and 11th Annual NASA  
4439 Space Radiation Health Investigators' Workshop. Physica Medica 17 Suppl. 1, 1-295  
4440
- 4441 Filius, R.W., 1965. Trapped protons of the inner radiation belt, Dissertation, Department of Physics  
4442 and Astronomy, University of Iowa.  
4443
- 4444 Flesch, F., Hirzebruch S.E., Hüntrup, G. et al., 1999. Fragmentation cross section measurements of  
4445 iron projectiles using CR-39 plastic nuclear track detectors. Radiat. Meas. 31 (1-6), 533-536.  
4446
- 4447 Flesch, F., Iancu, G., Heinrich, W., Yasuda, H., 2001. Projectile Fragmentation of Silicon Ions at 490  
4448 A MeV, Radiat. Meas. 34, 237 -240  
4449
- 4450 Freden, S.C., Paulikas, G.A., 1964. Trapped protons at low altitudes in the South Atlantic magnetic  
4451 anomaly. J. Geophys. Res. 69, 1259-1269.  
4452
- 4453 Fry, R.J.M., Powers-Risius, P., Alpen, E.L. et al., 1985. High LET radiation carcinogenesis. Radiat.  
4454 Res. 104, S188-S195.  
4455
- 4456 Fuglesang, C., 2007. Using the human eye to image space radiation or the history and status of the  
4457 light flash phenomena. Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A 580, 861-865.  
4458
- 4459 George, K., Cucinotta, F.A., 2007. The influence of shielding on the biological effectiveness of  
4460 accelerated particles for the induction of chromosome damage. Adv. Space Res. **39**, 1076-1081.  
4461
- 4462 George, K., Durante, M., Wu, H., Willingham, V., Badhwar, G., Cucinotta, F.A., 2001. Chromosome  
4463 aberrations in the blood lymphocytes of astronauts after space flight. Radiat. Res. , 731-738.  
4464
- 4465 George, K., Durante, M., Willingham, V. et al., 2003. Biological effectiveness of accelerated particles  
4466 for the induction of chromosome damage measured in metaphase and interphase human  
4467 lymphocytes. Radiat. Res. 160, 425-435  
4468
- 4469 Goldhaber, A.S., 1974. Statistical models of fragmentation processes. Phys. Lett. 53B, 306-309.  
4470

- 4471 Goldhagen, P., Clem, J.M., J. W. Wilson, J.W., 2004. The energy spectrum of cosmic ray induced  
4472 neutrons measured on an airplane over a wide range of altitude and latitude. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.*  
4473 110(4), 387-392.  
4474
- 4475 Gong, J.K., Glomski, C.A., Guo, Y., 1999. A lifelong, wide-range radiation biodosimeter:  
4476 erythrocytes with transferrin receptors. *Health Phys.* 77(6), 713-718.  
4477
- 4478 Goodhead, D.T., Munson, R.J., Thacker, J., Cox, R., 1980. Mutation and inactivation of cultured  
4479 mammalian cells exposed to beams of accelerated heavy ions. IV. Biophysical interpretation. *Int*  
4480 *J Radiat Biol.* 37, 135-167.  
4481
- 4482 Gudowska, I., Sobolevsky, N., Andreo, P. et al., 2004 Ion beam transport in tissue-like media using  
4483 the Monte Carlo code SHIELD-HIT *Phys. Med. Biol.* 49 (10), 1935–1958  
4484
- 4485 Gunther, W., Leugner, D., Becker, E. et al., 2002. Energy spectrum of 50-250 MeV/nucleon iron  
4486 nuclei inside the MIR space craft. *Radiat. Meas.* 35 (5), 511-514  
4487
- 4488 HAMLET, 2011. Human model MATROSHKA for radiation exposure determination of astronauts.  
4489 European Commission: Seventh Framework Programme (FP7) of the EU. [www.fp7-hamlet.eu](http://www.fp7-hamlet.eu).  
4490
- 4491 Hathaway, D.H., Wilson, R.M., Reichmann, E.J., 2002. Group sunspot numbers: Sunspot cycle  
4492 characteristics. *Solar Physics* 211, 357-370.  
4493
- 4494 Heinbockel, J.H., Slaba, T.C., Blattnig, S.R. et al., 2011. Comparison of the transport codes  
4495 HZETRN, HETC and FLUKA for a solar particle event. *Adv. Space Res.* 47, 10791088.  
4496
- 4497 Heinrich, W., Spill, A., 1979. Geomagnetic shielding of cosmic rays for different satellite orbits. *J.*  
4498 *Geophys. Res.* 84, 4401.  
4499
- 4500 Henkner, K., Sobolevsky, N., Jäkel, O., Paganetti, H., 2004. Test of the nuclear interaction model in  
4501 SHIELD-HIT and comparison to energy distributions from GEANT4. *Phys. Med. Biol.* 54 (22),  
4502 509-517  
4503
- 4504 Hoff, J.L., Townsend, L.W., Zapp, E.N. 2004. Interplanetary crew doses and dose equivalents:  
4505 variations among different bone marrow and skin sites. *Adv. Space Res.* 34, 1347-1352.  
4506
- 4507 Hufner, J., 1985. Heavy fragments produced in proton-nucleus and nucleus-nucleus collisions at  
4508 relativistic energies. *Phys. Rep.* 125, 129-185.  
4509
- 4510 Hufner, J., Schafer, K., Schurmann, B., 1975. Abrasion-ablation in reactions between relativistic  
4511 heavy ions. *Phys. Rev.* C12, 1888-1898.  
4512
- 4513 Hughes, H.G., Prael, R.E., Little, R.C., 1997. The LAHET/MCNP Code Merger. Los Alamos  
4514 National Laboratory, LA-UR-97-4891. X-Division Research Note XTM-RN(U)97-012.  
4515
- 4516 IAEA, 2011. Cytogenetic dosimetry applications in preparedness for and response to radiation  
4517 emergencies. International Atomic Energy Agency (in press).  
4518
- 4519 IAGA, 1992. The International Geomagnetic Reference Field (IGRF) 1991 Revision. International  
4520 Association of Geomagnetism and Aeronomy, Division V, WG 8, EOS Trans. AGU 73, 182.  
4521
- 4522 ICRP/ICRU, 1963. Report of the RBE Committee of the ICRP and ICRU. *Health Physics* 9, 357.

- 4523  
4524 ICRP, 1977. Recommendations of the International Commission on Radiological Protection. ICRP  
4525 Publication 26. Ann. ICRP 1 (3).  
4526  
4527 ICRP, 1989. RBE for deterministic effects. ICRP Publication 58. Ann. ICRP 20 (4).  
4528  
4529 ICRP, 1991. 1990 Recommendations of the International Commission on Radiological Protection.  
4530 ICRP Publication 60. Ann. ICRP 21 (1-3).  
4531  
4532 ICRP, 1997. General Principles for the Radiation Protection of Workers. ICRP Publication 75. Ann.  
4533 ICRP 27 (1).  
4534  
4535 ICRP, 2003. Relative biological effectiveness (RBE), quality factor (Q) and radiation weighting  
4536 factor ( $w_R$ ). ICRP Publication 92. Ann. ICRP 33 (4).  
4537  
4538 ICRP, 2005. Low-dose Extrapolation of Radiation-related Cancer Risk. ICRP Publication 99. Ann.  
4539 ICRP 35 (4).  
4540  
4541 ICRP, 2007. The 2007 Recommendations of the International Commission on Radiological  
4542 Protection. ICRP Publication 103. Ann. ICRP 37 (2-4).  
4543  
4544 ICRP, 2009. Adult reference computational phantoms, ICRP Publication 110, Annals of the ICRP 39  
4545 (2).  
4546  
4547 ICRP, 2012. Conversion Coefficients for Radiological Protection Quantities for External Radiation  
4548 Exposures. ICRP Publication 116, Annals of the ICRP 40 (1).  
4549  
4550 ICRU, 1970. Linear Energy Transfer. ICRP Report 16. ICRU Publications: Bethesda, MD.  
4551  
4552 ICRU, 1978. Basic Aspects of High Energy Particle Interactions and Radiation Dosimetry. ICRU  
4553 Report 28. ICRU Publications: Bethesda, MD.  
4554  
4555 ICRU, 1985. Determination of Dose Equivalents Resulting from External Radiation Sources. ICRU  
4556 Report 39. ICRU Publications: Bethesda, MD.  
4557  
4558 ICRU, 1986. The quality factor in radiation protection. ICRU Report 40. ICRU Publications:  
4559 Bethesda, MD.  
4560  
4561 ICRU, 1988. Determination of Dose Equivalents from External Radiation Sources – Part 2. ICRU  
4562 Report 43. ICRU Publications: Bethesda, MD.  
4563  
4564 ICRU, 1992. Measurements of Dose Equivalents from External Photon and Electron Radiations.  
4565 ICRU Report 47. ICRU Publications: Bethesda, MD.  
4566  
4567 ICRU, 1993. Quantities and Units in Radiation Protection Dosimetry. ICRU Report 51. ICRU  
4568 Publications: Bethesda, MD.  
4569  
4570 ICRU, 2001. Determination of operational dose equivalent quantities for neutrons. ICRU Report 66.  
4571 Journal of ICRU 1 (3).  
4572  
4573 ICRU, 2010. Reference data for the validation of doses from cosmic radiation exposure of aircraft  
4574 crew. ICRU Report 84. Journal of ICRU 10 (2).

- 4578  
4579 ICRU, 2011. Fundamental Quantities and Units for Ionising Radiation (*Revised*). ICRU Report 85a.  
4580 Journal of ICRU 11 (1a).  
4581  
4582 ISO/IEC, 2005. Guide 98-3 Guide to the Expression of Uncertainty in Measurement (GUM).  
4583 International Organization for Standardization, Geneva.  
4584  
4585 ISO/IEC, 2007. Guide 99 International vocabulary of basic and general terms in metrology(VIM).  
4586 International Organization for Standardization, Geneva.  
4587  
4588 ISO/IEC, 2009. Guide 98-1 Uncertainty of Measurement – Part 1: Introduction to the Expression of  
4589 Uncertainty in Measurement. International Organization for Standardization, Geneva.  
4590  
4591 Iwamoto, Y., Niita, K., Sakamoto, Y., Sato, T., Matsuda, N., 2007. Validation of the event generator  
4592 mode in the PHITS code and its application International Conference on Nuclear Data for  
4593 Science and Technology 2007 doi: 10.1051/ndata:07417  
4594  
4595 James, M.R., McKinney, G.W., Durkee, J.W. et al., 2009. MCMPIX 2.7.X – New features being  
4596 developed. IEEE/NSS, Orlando, <http://mcpix.lanl.gov/>  
4597  
4598 JCGM - Joint Committee for Guides in Metrology, 2008b. Evaluation of measurement data - Guide to  
4599 the expression of uncertainty in measurement. JCGM 100, ISO/IEC Guide 98-3.  
4600  
4601 JCGM - Joint Committee for Guides in Metrology, 2009. Evaluation of measurement data - An  
4602 introduction to the "*Guide to the expression of uncertainty in measurement*". JCGM 104,  
4603 ISO/IEC Guide 98-1.  
4604  
4605 JCGM - Joint Committee for Guides in Metrology, 2008a. International vocabulary of metrology  
4606 - Basic and general concepts and associated terms (VIM). JCGM 200, ISO/IEC Guide  
4607 99:2007  
4608  
4609 Jones, M. R., 2000. ACS WFC CCD Radiation test: The Radiation Environment. ACS Institutional  
4610 Science Report 00-09, Space Telescope Science Institute.  
4611  
4612 Katz, R., 1970. RBE, LET and  $z/\beta^a$ . Health Phys. 18, 175-???.  
4613  
4614 Katz, R., Sharma, S.C., Homayoonfar, M., 1972. The structure of particle tracks. In: Attix, F.H.  
4615 Topics in Radiation Dosimetry. Supplement 1. 317-383. Academic Press, New York, London.  
4616  
4617 Kiefer, J., Schreiber, A., Gutermuth, F., Koch, S., Schmidt, P., 1999. Mutation induction by different  
4618 types of radiation at the *Hprt* locus. Mutation Research/Fundamental and Molecular Mechanisms  
4619 of Mutagenesis 431 (2), 429-448.  
4620  
4621 Kiefer, J., Schmidt, P., Koch, S., 2001. Mutations in Mammalian Cells Induced by Heavy Charged  
4622 Particles: An Indicator for Risk Assessment in Space. Radiat. Res. 156, 607-611.  
4623  
4624 Kim, Y., Atwell, W., Tylka, A.J. et al., 2010a. Radiation dose assessments of solar particle events with  
4625 spectral representation at high energies for the improvement of radiation protection. 38th COSPAR  
4626 Scientific Assembly, paper number F24-0005-10.  
4627  
4628 Kim, Y., De Angelis, G., Cucinotta, F.A., 2011. Probabilistic assessment of radiation risk of astronauts  
in space missions. Acta Astronautica 68, 747-759.

- 4629  
4630 Kim, M.Y., Qualles, G.D., Slabba, T.C., Cucinotta, F.A., 2010b. Comparison of organ dose and dose  
4631 equivalent for human phantoms of CAM vs. MAX. *Adv. Space Res.* 45, 850-857.  
4632  
4633 Knoll, G.F., 2000. Radiation detection and measurement, 3<sup>rd</sup> edition. New York: John Wiley & Sons.  
4634  
4635 Knott, C.N. et al., 1996. Interactions of Relativistic Neon to Nickel Projectiles in Hydrogen,  
4636 Elemental Production Cross Sections. *Phys. Rev. C* 53, 347-357.  
4637  
4638 Knott, C.N. et al., 1997. Interactions of Relativistic <sup>36</sup>Ar and <sup>40</sup>Ar Nuclei in Hydrogen: Isotopic  
4639 Production Cross Sections. *Phys. Rev. C* 56, 398-406.  
4640  
4641 Koliskova, Z., Sihver, L., Ambrozova, I. et al., 2012. Simulations of absorbed dose on the phantom  
4642 surface of MATROSHKA-R experiment at the ISS. *Adv. Space Res.* 49, 230-236.  
4643  
4644 Konradi, A., Atwell, W., Badhwar, G. D., Cast, B. L., Hardy, K. A., 1992. Low Earth orbit radiation  
4645 dose distribution in a phantom head. *Nucl. Tracks Radiat. Meas.* 20, 49–54.  
4646  
4647 Koshiishi, H., Matsumoto, H., Chishiki, A. et al., 2007. Evaluation of the neutron radiation  
4648 environment inside the International Space Station based on the Bonner Ball Neutron Detector  
4649 experiment. *Radiat. Meas.* 42, 1510–1520.  
4650  
4651 Lee, K., Flanders, J., Semones, E. Et al., 2007. Simultaneous observation of the radiation environment  
4652 inside and outside the ISS. *Adv. Space Res.* 40, 1558-1561.  
4653  
4654 Lenchek, A.M., Singer, S.F., 1962. Effects of the finite gyroradii of geomagnetically trapped  
4655 protons. *J. Geophys. Res.* 67, 4073-4075.  
4656  
4657 Lewis, B.J., Smith, M.B., Ing, H. et al., 2012. Review of bubble detector response characteristics and  
4658 results from space. *Radiat Prot. Dosim.* 150, 1-21  
4659  
4660 Lutz, G., 1999. Semiconductor radiation devices. *Device Physics*. Berlin: Springer Verlag.  
4661  
4662 Matsumoto, H., Goka, T., Koga, K. et al., 2001. Real-time measurement of low-energy-range neutron  
4663 spectra on board the space shuttle STS-89 (S/MM-8). *Radiat. Meas.* 33, 321-333.  
4664  
4665 Matthiä, 2012. DLR Cologne, personal communication (to be published).  
4666  
4667 Menzel, H.G., Paretzke, H.G., Booz, J. (eds), 1989. Implementation of dose equivalent meters based  
4668 on microdosimetric techniques in radiation protection. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 29 (1-2).  
4669  
4670 Mezentsev, A., Amundson, S.A., 2011. Global gene expression to low- or high-dose radiation in a  
4671 human three-dimensional tissue model. *Radiat. Res.* 175(6), 677-688.  
4672  
4673 Miller, J., 1997. “Database development and laboratory validation“ in „Shielding Strategies for  
4674 Human Space Exploration, Wilson, J.W., Miller, J., Konradi, A., Cucinotta, F.A. eds. NASA CP-  
4675 3360, NASA Langley Research Center.  
4676  
4677 Mitaroff, A., Silari, M., 2002. The CERN-EU high-energy Reference Field (CERF) facility for  
4678 dosimetry at commercial flight altitudes and in space. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 102, 7- 22.  
4679

- 4680 Narici, L., Belli, F., Bidoli, V. Et al., 2004. The ALTEA/ALTEINO projects: studying functional  
4681 effects of microgravity and cosmic radiation. *Adv. Space Res.* 33, 1352-1357.  
4682
- 4683 NCRP, 1989. *Guidanc on Radiation Received in Space Activities*. NCRP Report No. 98. National  
4684 Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements. Bethesda, MD.  
4685
- 4686 NCRP, 1990. *The Relative Biological Effectiveness of Radiations of Different Quality*. NCRP Report  
4687 No. 104. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements. Bethesda, MD.  
4688
- 4689 NCRP, 1997. *Acceptability of Risk from Radiation- Application to Human Space Flight*. NCRP  
4690 Symposium Proceedings No. 3. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements.  
4691 Bethesda, MD.  
4692
- 4693 NCRP, 2000. *Radiation Protection Guidance for Activities in Low-Earth Orbit*. NCRP Report No.  
4694 132. National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurements. Bethesda, MD.  
4695
- 4696 NCRP, 2002. *Operational Radiation Safety Program for Astronauts in Low-Earth Orbit: A Basic  
4697 Framework*. NCRP Report No. 142. National Council on Radiation Protection and  
4698 Measurements. Bethesda, MD.  
4699
- 4700 NCRP, 2006. *Information Needed to Make Radiation Protection Recommendations for Space  
4701 Missions Beyond Low-Earth Orbit*. NCRP Report No. 153. National Council on Radiation  
4702 Protection and Measurements, Bethesda, MD.  
4703
- 4704 Niita, K., Iwamoto, Y., Sato, T., Iwase, H., Matsuda, N., Sakamoto, Y., Nakashima, H., 2007. A new  
4705 treatment of radiation behaviour beyond one-body observables *International Conference on  
4706 Nuclear Data for Science and Technology 2007* doi: 10.1051/ndata:07398  
4707
- 4708 Niita, K., Matsuda, N., Iwamoto, Y. et al., 2010. PHITS: Particle and Heavy Ion Transport code  
4709 System, Version 2.23. *JAEA-Data/Code 2010-022*.  
4710
- 4711 Nikjoo, H., Uehara, S., Pinsky, L., Cucinotta, F.A., 2007. Modelling and calculations of the response  
4712 of tissue equivalent proportional counter to charged particles. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 126, 512-518  
4713
- 4714 NMDB, 2011. *Real time database for high resolution monitor measurements*. Neutron Monitor Data  
4715 Base. EU 7<sup>th</sup> research programme, <http://www.nmdb.eu/?q=node/138>  
4716
- 4717 Nymnik, R.A., 1999. The problems of cosmic ray particle simulation for the near-Earth orbital and  
4718 interplanetary flight conditions. *Rad. Measurements* 30, 669-677.  
4719
- 4720 Obe, G., Facius, R., Reitz, G. et al., 199. *Manned missions to Mars and chromosome damage*. *Int. J.  
4721 Radiat. Biol.* 75 (4), 429-433.  
4722
- 4723 O'Sullivan, D., Zhou, D., Heinrich, W. et al., 1999. Cosmic rays and dosimetry at aviation altitudes.  
4724 *Radiat. Meas.* 31 (1-6), 579-584.  
4725
- 4726 Otto, Th., 2010. Response of the DIS-1 personal dosimeter to neutrons, protons and other hadrons.  
4727 *Radiat. Meas.* 45, 1564-1567.  
4728
- 4729 Payne, M.G., 1969. Energy straggling of heavy charged particles in thick absorbers. *Phys Rev.* 185,  
4730 611.  
4731

- 4732 Pellicioni, M., 1998. Radiation weighting factors and high energy radiation. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 80,  
4733 371-378.  
4734
- 4735 Pellicioni, M., 2009. (Private information).  
4736
- 4737 Pelowitz, D.B., 2008. MCNPX User's Manual, Version 2.6.0. LA-CP-07-1473 (Los Alamos: New  
4738 Mexico)  
4739
- 4740 Plante, I., Cucinotta, F.A., 2008. Ionization and excitation cross sections for the interaction of HZE  
4741 particles in liquid water and application to Monte-Carlo simulation of radiation tracks. *New J.*  
4742 *Phys.* 10, 125020 doi: 10.1088/1367-2630/10/12/125020.  
4743
- 4744 Posner, A.; Hassler, D. M.; McComas, D. J., 2005. A high energy telescope for the solar orbiter *Adv.*  
4745 *Space Res.* 36 (8), 1426-1431.  
4746
- 4747 Prosser, J.S., Moquet, J.E., Lloyd, D.C., Edwards, A.A., 1988. Radiation induction of micronuclei in  
4748 human lymphocytes. *Mut. Res. Fundam. Molecular Mechan. of Mutag.* 199(1) 37-45.  
4749
- 4750 Reedy R. C., 1996. Constraints on solar particle events from comparisons of recent events and  
4751 million-year averages. In: *Solar Drivers of Interplanetary and Terrestrial Disturbances.*  
4752 (Balasubramaniam K S, Kiel S. L, Smartt R N, Eds.) p. 429-436, ASP Conf. Ser. Vol.95,  
4753 Astronomical Society of the Pacific.  
4754
- 4755 Reitz, G., Beaujean, R., Benton, E. et al., 2005. Space radiation measurements on\_board ISS – The  
4756 DOSMAP experiment. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 116, 374 – 379.  
4757
- 4758 Reitz, G., Berger, T., 2006. The MATROSHKA facility—Dose determination during an EVA. *Radiat.*  
4759 *Prot. Dosim.* 120 (1–4), 442–445.  
4760
- 4761 Reitz, G., Berger, T., Bilski, P. et al., 2009. Astronaut's organ doses inferred from measurements in a  
4762 human phantom outside the International Space Station. *Radiat. Res.* 171, 225-235.  
4763
- 4764 Reitz, G., 2012. Private communication  
4765
- 4766 Sampsonidis, D., Papanastassiou, E., Zamani, M. et al., 1995. Fragmentation cross sections of  $^{16}\text{O}$ ,  
4767  $^{24}\text{Mg}$ , and  $^{32}\text{S}$  projectiles at 3.65 GeV/nucleon. *Phys. Rev.* 51(6), 3304-3308  
4768
- 4769 Sato T., Endo A. and Niita K., 2010. Fluence-to-dose conversion coefficients for heavy ions  
4770 calculated using PHITS code and ICRP/ICRU Adult reference computational phantoms, *Phys.*  
4771 *Med. Biol.* 55(8), 2235-2246.  
4772
- 4773 Sato T., Endo A. and Niita K., 2011. Dose estimation for astronauts using dose conversion  
4774 coefficients calculated by the PIHTS code and the ICRP/ICRU adult reference computationl  
4775 phantoms. *Radiat. Environ. Biophys.* 50, 115-123  
4776
- 4777 Sato T., Endo A., Zankl M., Petoussi-Henss N., Niita K., 2009. Fluence-to-dose conversion  
4778 coefficients for neutrons and protons calculated using the PHITS code and ICRP/ICRU adult  
4779 reference computational phantoms. *Phys. Med. Biol.* 54 (7), 1997-2014.  
4780
- 4781 Sato, T., Endo, A., Niita, K., 2012. Comparison of mean quality factors proposed by ICRP, ICRU and  
4782 NASA. COSPAR-2012 (to be published)  
4783

- 4784 Sato T., Niita K., Iwase H., Nakashima H., Yamaguchi Y., Sihver L., 2006. Applicability of particle  
4785 and heavy ion transport code PHITS to the shielding design of spacecrafts. *Radiat. Meas.* 41,  
4786 1142-1146  
4787
- 4788 Sawyer, D. M., Vette, J.I., 1976. AP-8 Trapped Proton Environment for Solar Maximum and Solar  
4789 Minimum, NSSDC/WDC-A-R&S 76-06  
4790
- 4791 Schimmerling, W., Wilson, J.W., Cucinotta, F.A. et al., 1999. Requirements for simulating space  
4792 radiations with particle accelerators. In: Risk evaluation of cosmic-ray exposure in long-term  
4793 manned space mission (K. Fujitaka, H. Majima, K. Ando, H. Yasuda, and M. Susuki, Eds.).  
4794 Kodansha Scientific Ltd., Tokyo, 1-16.  
4795
- 4796 Schimmerling, W., 2010. Accepting space radiation risks. *Radiat. Env. Biophys.* 49, 325-329.  
4797
- 4798 Schlatt H., Zankl M. and Petoussi-Henss N. (2007), Organ dose conversion coefficients for voxel  
4799 models of the reference male and female from idealized photon exposures, *Phys. Med. Bio.* 53,  
4800 2123-2145.  
4801
- 4802 Schmidt, E., Regulla, D., Kramer, H.M., 2002. The effect of 29 keV x-rays on the dose response of  
4803 chromosome aberrations in human lymphocytes. *Radiat. Res.* 158, 771-777.  
4804
- 4805 Schmitz, Th., Waker, A.J., Kliauga, P., Zoetelief, H. (eds), 1995. Design, construction and use of  
4806 tissue-equivalent proportional counters – EURADOS report. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 61 (4).  
4807
- 4808 Schoeftner, S., Blanco, R., de Silanes, I.L. et al., 2009. Telomere shortening relaxes X chromosome  
4809 inactivation and forces global transcriptome alterations. *Proc. National. Acad. Sci.* 106 (46),  
4810 19393-19398  
4811
- 4812 Semkova, J., Koleva, R., Shurshakov, V. et al., 2007. Status and calibration results of Liulin-5  
4813 charged particle telescope designed for radiation measurements in a human phantom onboard the  
4814 International Space Station. *Adv. Space Res.* 40 (11), 1586-1592  
4815
- 4816 Shinn, J.L., Cucinotta, F.A., Simonsen, L.C. et al., 1998. Validation of a comprehensive space  
4817 radiation transport code. *IEEE Trans. Nucl. Sci.* 45(6), 2711-2719  
4818
- 4819 Shurshakov, V.A., Akatov Y.A., Petrov, V.M. et al., 2004. MATROSHKA-R experiment onboard the  
4820 ISS: current status and preliminary results, 9<sup>th</sup> WRMIS meeting, Vienna, Sep.8-10.  
4821
- 4822 Sihver L., Mancusi D., Niita K. et al., 2007. Recent developments and benchmarking of the PHITS  
4823 code. *Adv. Space Res.* 40, 1320-1331.  
4824
- 4825 Sihver L., Mancusi, D., Niita, K. et al., 2008. Benchmarking of calculated projectile fragmentation  
4826 cross-sections using the 3-D, MC codes PHITS, FLUKA, HETC-HEDES, MCNPX\_HI, and  
4827 NUCFRG2. *Acta Astronautica* 63, 865-877.  
4828
- 4829 Sihver, L., Sato, T., Gustafsson, K. et al. 2010a. An update about recent developments of the PHITS  
4830 code. *Adv. Space Res.* 45, 892-899  
4831
- 4832 Sihver, L., Sato, T., Puchalska, M., Reitz, G., 2010b. Simulations of MATROSHKA experiments at  
4833 the international space station using PHITS. *Radiat. Environ. Biophys.* 49, 351-357.  
4834
- 4835 Slaba, T.C., Qualls, G.D., Cloudsley, M.S. et al. 2010. Utilization of CAM, CAF, MAX, and FAX for

- 4836 space radiation analyses using HZETRN, *Adv. Space Res.* 45(7), 866-883  
4837  
4838 Slaba, T.C., Kim, M.Y., 2009. ((Section 5.3, par (237) HZETRN ))  
4839  
4840 Smart, D.F., Shea, M.A., 2008. World grid of calculated cosmic ray vertical cutoff rigidities for  
4841 Epoch 2000.0. *Proc. 30th International Cosmic Ray Conference: Caballero, R., D'Olivo, J.C.,*  
4842 *Medina-Tanco, G., Nellen, L., Sánchez, F.A., Valdés-Galicia, J.F. (eds.).Universidad Nacional*  
4843 *Autónoma de México, Mexico City, Mexico, Vol. 1, 737–740).*  
4844  
4845 Snyder, W.S., Ford, M.R., Warner, G.G. et al., 1969. Estimates of absorbed fractions for  
4846 monoenergetic photon sources uniformly distributed in various organs of a heterogeneous  
4847 phantom. *MIRD Pamphlet No. 5. J. Nucl. Med.* 10(Suppl. 3) 46–51.  
4848  
4849 Sobolevsky, N.M. 2003. The SHIELD transport code for Monte Carlo simulation of interaction of  
4850 hadrons and nuclei with complex extended targets. GSI  
4851  
4852 Spjeldvik, W.N., Rothwell, P.L., 1983. The Earth radiation belts, AFGL-TR-83-0240, Air Force  
4853 Geophysics Laboratory, Hanscom AFB, Massachusetts.  
4854  
4855 Spurny, F., Dachev, T. S., 2003. Long-term monitoring of the onboard aircraft exposure level with a  
4856 Si-diode based spectrometer. *Adv. Space Res.* 32(1), 53–58.  
4857  
4858 Taucher-Scholz, G., Kraft, G., 1999. Influence of radiation quality on the yield of DANN strand  
4859 breaks for SV40 DNA irradiated in solution. *Radiat. Res.* 151, 595-604.  
4860  
4861 Townsend, L.W., Cucinotta, F.A., 1996. Overview of nuclear fragmentation models and needs. *Adv.*  
4862 *Space Res.* 17(2), 59-68.  
4863  
4864 Townsend, L.W., Miller, T.M., Gabriel, T.A., 2002. Modifications to the HETC Radiation Transport  
4865 Code for Space Radiation Shielding Applications: A Status Report. 12th Biennial ANS  
4866 Radiation Protection and Shielding Division Topical Meeting, Sante Fe, NM.  
4867  
4868 Townsend, L.W., Miller, T.M., Gabriel, T.A., 2005. HETC radiation transport code development for  
4869 cosmic ray shielding applications in space. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 116, 135-139.  
4870  
4871 Townsend, L.W., Wilson, J.W., 1986a. Energy-Dependent Parameterizations of Heavy-Ion  
4872 Absorption Cross Sections. *Radiat. Res.* 106, 283-287.  
4873  
4874 Townsend, L.W., Wilson, J.W., Cucinotta, F.A., Norbury, J.W., 1986b. Comparison of Optical  
4875 Model Differences in Heavy Ion Fragmentation: Optical Versus Geometric. *Phys. Rev. C* 34,  
4876 1491-1495.  
4877  
4878 Tripathi, R.K., Wilson, J.W., Cucinotta, F.A., 2001. Medium Modified Two-Body Scattering  
4879 Amplitude from Proton-Nucleus Total Cross-Sections. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. Phys. Res B* 173,  
4880 391-396.  
4881  
4882 Trovati, S., Ballarini, F., Battistoni, G. et al., 2006. Human Exposure to Space Radiation: Role of  
4883 Primary and Secondary Particles. *Radiat Prot Dosim.* 122, 362-366.  
4884  
4885 Tull, C.E., 1990. Relativistic Heavy Ion Fragmentation at HISS. LBL-29718. Univ. of Calif.  
4886

- 4887 Tucker, J.D., Tawn, E.J., Holdsworth, D. et al, 1997. Biological dosimetry of radiation workers at the  
4888 Sellafield nuclear facility. *Radiat. Res.* 148(3), 216-226  
4889
- 4890 Tucker, J.D., 2008. Low-dose ionizing radiation and chromosome translocations: A review of the  
4891 major considerations for human biological dosimetry. *Mutation Research/Reviews in Mutation*  
4892 *Research* 659(3), 211-220  
4893
- 4894 Tweed, J., Waker, S.A., Wilson, J.W. et al., 2005. Computational methods for the HZETRN code.  
4895 *Adv. Space Res.* 35(2), 194-201.  
4896
- 4897 Uchihori, Y., Fujitaka, K., Yasuda, N., Benton, E., 2002. Intercomparison of Radiation Instruments  
4898 for Cosmic-ray with Heavy Ion Beams at NIRS (ICCHIBAN Project). *J. of Radiat. Res.* 43S  
4899 (Space radiation research), S81-S85.  
4900
- 4901 Vette, J. I., 1991. The AE-8 Trapped electron model environment, NSSDC/WDC-A-R&S 91-24.  
4902
- 4903 Vral, A., Thierens, H., De Ridder, L., (1997). *In vitro* micronucleus-centromere assay to detect  
4904 radiation damage induced by low doses in human lymphocytes. *Int. J. Radiat. Biol.* 71, 61-68.  
4905
- 4906 Waker, A.J., 1995. Principles of experimental microdosimetry. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 61, 271-308.  
4907
- 4908 Waters, L.S. ed., 2002. MCNPX User's Manual, Version 2.3.0. Los Alamos National Laboratory  
4909 Report LA-UR-02-2607.  
4910
- 4911 Webber, W.R., Southoul, A., Ferrando P. Gupta, M. 1990a. The Source Charge and Isotropic  
4912 Abundances of Cosmic Rays with Z=9-16: A Study Using New Fragmentation Cross-  
4913 Sections. *The Astrophys. J.* **348**, 611-620 (1990a).  
4914
- 4915 Webber, W.R., Kish, J.C., Schrier, D.A., 1990b. Individual Isotopic Fragmentation Cross-Sections of  
4916 Relativistic Nuclei in Hydrogen, Helium and Carbon Targets. *Phys. Rev.* **C41**, 547.  
4917
- 4918 Weil, M.M., Bedford, J.S., Bielefeldt-Ohmann, H. et al., 2009. Incidence of acute myeloid leukemia  
4919 and hepatocellular carcinoma in mice irradiated with 1 GeV/nucleon <sup>56</sup>Fe ions. *Radiat. Res.* 172,  
4920 213-219.  
4921
- 4922 WELMEC, 2008. Software Guide (Measuring Instruments Directive 2004/22/EC). WELMEC 7.2  
4923 Issue 4. WELMEC secretariat, Ljubljana, Slovenia.  
4924
- 4925 Wernli, C., Fiechtner, A., Kahilainen, J., 1999. The Direct Ion Storage Dosimeter for the  
4926 Measurement of Photon, Beta and Neutron Dose Equivalents. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 84(1-4), 331-  
4927 334  
4928
- 4929 Wernli, C., Kahilainen, J., 2001. Direct ion storage dosimetry systems for photon, beta and neutron  
4930 radiation with instant readout capabilities. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 96(1-3), 255-259  
4931
- 4932 Westfall, G.D., Wilson, L.W., Lindstrom, H.J. et al., 1979. Fragmentation of relativistic <sup>56</sup>Fe. *Phys.*  
4933 *Rev. C* 19, 1309-1323.  
4934
- 4935 Wiegel, B., Alevra, A.V., 2002. NEMUS - The PTB Neutron Multisphere Spectrometer: Bonner  
4936 Spheres and More. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. A* 476, 36-41.  
4937

- 4938 Wilson, J.W., 1978. Environmental geophysics and SPS shielding. Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory  
4939 Report LBL-8581, pp 33-116.  
4940
- 4941 Wilson, J.W., Tweed, J., Nealy, J.E. et al., 1994b. Galactic cosmic ray transport methods: Past,  
4942 present, and future. *Adv. Space Res.* 14, 841-852  
4943
- 4944 Wilson, J.W., Tripathi, R.K., Qualls, G.D. et al., 2004. Space radiation transport method development.  
4945 *Adv. Space Res.* 34(6), 1319-1327  
4946
- 4947 Wilson, *et al.*, NUCFRG2, 1995b. An Evaluation of the Semiempirical Nuclear Fragmentation  
4948 Database. NASA TP 3533.  
4949
- 4950 Wilson, J.W., Cucinotta, F.A., Miller, J. et al., 2001. Approaches and Issues Related to Shield  
4951 Material Design to Protect Astronauts from Space Radiation. *Materials and Design* 22, 541-554.  
4952
- 4953 Wilson J. W., Cucinotta F. A., Shinn J. L., Simonson L. C., Dubey R. R., Jordan W. R., Jones T. D.,  
4954 Chang C. V., Kim M. Y., 1999. Shielding from solar particles events in space. *Radiation*  
4955 *Measurements* 30(3).  
4956
- 4957 Wilson, J.W., Kim, M.Y., L.W., Schimmerling, W. et al., 1995a. Issues in Space Radiation  
4958 Protection. *Health Physics* 68, 50-58.  
4959
- 4960 Wilson, J.W., Nealy, J.E., Dachev, Ts.P. et al., 2007. Time serial analysis of the induced LEO  
4961 environment within the ISS 6A. *Adv. Space Res.* 40, 1562-1570  
4962
- 4963 Wilson, J.W., Nealy, J.E., Wood, J.S. et al., 1995c. Variations in astronaut radiation exposure due to  
4964 anisotropic shield distribution. *Health Phys.* 69, 34-45.  
4965
- 4966 Wilson, J.W., Shinn, J.L., Townsend, L.W., et al., 1994a. NUCFRG2: a semiempirical nuclear  
4967 fragmentation model. *Nucl. Instrum. Meth. Phys. Res. B* 94, 95-102.  
4968
- 4969 Wilson, J.W., Townsend, L.W., Schimmerling, W. et al., 1991. Transport Methods and Interactions  
4970 for Space Radiations. NASA RP 1257.  
4971
- 4972 Wissmann, F., Langner, F., Roth, J., Schrewe, U., 2004. A mobile TEPC-based system to measure the  
4973 contributions to  $H^*(10)$  at flight altitudes. *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 110, 347-349.  
4974
- 4975 Wong, M., Schimmerling, W., Phillips, M.H. et al., 1990. The Multiple Scattering of Very Heavy  
4976 Charged Particles. *Med. Phys.* 17, 163-171.  
4977
- 4978 Yang, T.C., George, K.A., Johnson, A.S. et al., 1997. Biodosimetry results from space flight Mir-18.  
4979 *Radiat. Res.* 148, 17-23.  
4980
- 4981 Yasuda, H., Badhwar, G. D., Komiyama, T., Fujitaka, K., 2000. Effective dose equivalent on the  
4982 ninth shuttle–Mir mission (STS-91). *Radiat. Res.* 154, 705–713.  
4983
- 4984 Yasuda, H., 2001. Responses of a direct ion storage dosimeter (DIS-1) to heavy charged particles.  
4985 *Radiat. Res.* 156 (6), 805-808.  
4986
- 4987 Yasuda, N., Uchihori, Y., Benton, E.R. et al., 2006. The intercomparison of cosmic rays with heavy  
4988 ion beams at NIRS (ICCHIBAN) project, *Radiat. Prot. Dosim.* 120(1-4), 414-420.  
4989

- 4990 Zankl, M., Witmann, A., 2001. The adult male voxel model "Golem" segmented from whole-body CT  
4991 patient data, Radiation and Environmental Biophysics, 40(2), 153-162.  
4992
- 4993 Zapp, E.N., Townsend, L.W., Cucinotta, F.A., 2002. Solar particle event organ doses and dose  
4994 equivalents for interplanetary crews: variations due to body size. Advances in Space Research,  
4995 30, 975-979.  
4996
- 4997 Zeitlin, C., Fukumura, A., Heilbronn, L. et al., 2001. Fragmentation Cross Sections of 600  
4998 MeV/nucleon <sup>20</sup>Ne on Elemental Targets. Phys. Rev. C 64, 24902.  
4999
- 5000 Zeitlin, C., Heilbronn, L., Miller, J. et al., 1997. Heavy Fragment Production Cross Sections from  
5001 1.05 GeV/nucleon <sup>56</sup>Fe in C, Al, Cu, Pb, and CH<sub>2</sub> Target. Phys. Rev. C 56, 388-3397.  
5002
- 5003 Zeitlin, C., Heilbronn, L., Miller, J. et al., 2002. Charge-changing and fragment production cross  
5004 sections of <sup>28</sup>Si on elemental targets from 400 MeV/nucleon to 1200 MeV/nucleon, LBNL-  
5005 47655.  
5006
- 5007 Zeitlin, C., Guetersloh, S.B., Heilbronn, L.H. et al., 2006. Measurements of materials shielding  
5008 properties with 1 GeV/u <sup>56</sup>Fe. Nucl. Instr. Meth. Phys. Res. B 252, 308–318  
5009
- 5010 Zhou, D., O’Sullivan, D., Semones, E., Heinrich, W., 2006. Radiation field of cosmic rays measured  
5011 in low earth orbit by CR39 detectors. Adv. Space Res. 37, 1764-1769.  
5012
- 5013 Zhou, D., O’Sullivan, D., Semones E., Zapp, N., Johnson, S., Weyland, M., 2008. Radiation  
5014 dosimetry for high LET particles in low Earth orbit. Acta Astronautica 63 (7-10), 855-846  
5015
- 5016 Ziegler, J.F., Biersack, J.P., Ziegler, M.D., 2008. SRIM - The Stopping and Range of Ions in Matter.  
5017 SRIM Co. [ISBN 0-9654207-1-X](https://www.srim.com/).  
5018  
5019  
5020

5021 ANNEX

5022

5023 **Conversion coefficients and mean quality factors for protons, neutrons, alpha particles**  
5024 **and heavy ions ( $2 < Z \leq 28$ ).**

5025

5026 (1) Conversion coefficients for mean absorbed doses in organs and tissues for males and  
5027 females based on the reference voxel phantoms (ICRP, 2009) are given for heavy ions  
5028 ( $2 < Z \leq 28$ ) with energies from 10 MeV/u to 100 GeV/u. For the skin data are given for the  
5029 energy range from 1 MeV/u to 100 GeV/u. The exposure geometry is always isotropic (ISO)  
5030 radiation incidence. The data were evaluated based on their calculated values using the  
5031 PHITS code (Sato et al., 2010).

5032 (2) Based on the  $Q(L)$  function (ICRP, 1991), also mean quality factors for organs and  
5033 tissues of the adult male and female reference phantom are given for the heavy ions and  
5034 energies mentioned above (Sato et al., 2010).

5035 (3) In addition to the mean quality factors based on  $Q(L)$ , data are presented for mean  
5036 quality factors for organs and tissues of the adult male and female reference phantom based  
5037 on the  $Q$ -concept developed by Cucinotta et al. (Cucinotta et al., 2011a) (see 3.2.3). The data  
5038 were also evaluated based on their calculated values using the PHITS code (Sato et al.,  
5039 2012). The quality factors are related to RBE for solid cancer, and those for leukaemia are  
5040 one-fourth of the corresponding data for solid cancer.

5041 (4) Furthermore, conversion coefficients from ICRP Publication 116 (ICRP, 2012) for  
5042 isotropic (ISO) exposure and mean quality factors are given for protons, neutrons, and alpha  
5043 particles. The mean quality factors were evaluated based on their calculated values using the  
5044 PHITS code (Sato et al. 2009, 2010 and 2012). The energy range considered for these  
5045 particles are the same as in ICRP Publication 116.